

# BÀI TẬP TIẾNG ANH

LỚP

11

*Có đáp án*

(Tái bản lần 01)



# CONTENT

**UNIT 1:** THE GENERATION GAP .....

**UNIT 2:** RELATIONSHIPS .....

**UNIT 3:** BECOMING INDEPENDENT .....

**UNIT 4:** CARING FOR THOSE IN NEED .....

**UNIT 5:** BEING A PART OF ASEAN .....

**THE FIRST TERM TEST** .....

**UNIT 6:** GLOBAL WARMING .....

**UNIT 7:** FURTHER EDUCATION .....

**UNIT 8:** OUR WORLD HERITAGE SITES .....

**UNIT 9:** CITIES OF THE FUTURE .....

**UNIT 10:** HEALTHY LIFESTYLE AND LONGEVITY .....

**THE SECOND TERM TEST** .....

**ANSWER KEY** .....

# Lời nói đầu

Cuốn sách **Bài tập Tiếng Anh lớp 11** được biên soạn theo chương trình Tiếng Anh lớp 11. Dựa vào phương pháp dạy ngôn ngữ giao tiếp (Communicative Language Teaching Method) cuốn sách tập trung vào việc phát triển các kỹ năng ngôn ngữ cho học sinh Trung học phổ thông, trong đó chú trọng vào luyện ngữ âm, từ vựng, kỹ năng đọc hiểu, viết và sử dụng ngôn ngữ tổng hợp thông qua các bài kiểm tra (Tests), giúp cho người học có khả năng tổng hợp kiến thức hiệu quả nhất.

Mỗi bài học trong cuốn sách **Bài tập Tiếng Anh lớp 11** được biên soạn theo chủ điểm quen thuộc với học sinh Trung học phổ thông.

Mỗi đơn vị bài học được chia thành 3 mục lớn như sau:

## **PART 1: VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR REVIEW**

### **PART 2: EXERCISES**

#### **A. PHONETICS**

#### **B. VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR**

#### **C. READING**

#### **D. WRITING**

### **PART 3: TEST YOURSELF**

Cuốn sách được biên soạn dựa trên thực tiễn của việc dạy và học tiếng Anh. Đây sẽ là nguồn tài liệu tham khảo bổ ích cho giáo viên và học sinh và rất thiết thực trong giao lưu quốc tế nhằm nâng cao khả năng sử dụng ngôn ngữ tiếng Anh trong thời kỳ hội nhập. Tác giả mong nhận được những ý kiến đóng góp của các nhà giáo, đồng nghiệp, phụ huynh học sinh và độc giả quan tâm để cuốn sách ngày một hoàn thiện hơn.

Trân trọng!

Tác giả

## Unit 1. THE GENERATION GAP

### PART 1: VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR REVIEW

#### A. VOCABULARY

afford	/ə'fɔ:d/	(v.)	có khả năng chi trả
attitude	/'ætɪtju:d/	(n.)	thái độ
burden	/'bɜ:dn/	(n.)	gánh nặng
casual	/'kæʒuəl/	(adj.)	bình thường, thường ngày
comfortable	/'kʌmfɪəbl/	(adj.)	thoải mái, dễ chịu
compare	/kəm'peə(r)/	(v.)	so sánh
conflict	/kɒnflɪkt/	(n.)	cuộc xung đột
control	/kən'trəʊl/	(v.)	điều khiển, chỉ đạo
curfew	/'kɜ:fju:z/	(n.)	lệnh giới nghiêm
dye	/daɪ/	(v.)	nhuộm
elegant	/'elɪgənt/	(adj.)	thanh lịch, tao nhã
flashy	/'flæʃi/	(adj.)	diện, hào nhoáng
forbid	/fə'brɪd/	(v.)	cấm, ngăn cấm
force	/fɔ:s/	(v.)	bắt buộc
frustrating	/frʌs'treɪtɪŋ/	(adj.)	khó chịu, bực mình
interact	/,ɪntə'rækt/	(v.)	tương tác, giao tiếp
judge	/dʒʌdʒ/	(v.)	phán xét, đánh giá
mature	/mə'tʃʊə(r)/	(adj.)	trưởng thành, chín chắn
norm	/nɔ:m/	(n.)	chuẩn mực
obey	/ə'bei/	(v.)	vâng lời, tuân thủ
pierce	/pɪəs/	(v.)	xấu khuyên (tai, mũi...)
rude	/ru:d/	(adj.)	thô lỗ, lỗ mãng
sibling	/'sɪblɪŋ/	(n.)	anh/ chị/ em ruột
skinny	/skɪni/	(adj.)	bó sát, ốm sát
spit	/spɪt/	(v.)	khạc nhổ
swear	/sweə(r)/	(v)	thề, chửi thề
tight	/taɪt/	(adj.)	bó sát, chặt
trend	/trend/	(n.)	xu hướng
trivial	/'trɪviəl/	(adj.)	nhỏ nhặt/ lặt vặt

value	/'vælju:/	(n.)	giá trị
brand name	/brænd neɪm/	(compound n.)	nhãn hiệu, thương hiệu
bridge the gap	/brɪdʒ ðə ɡæp/	(idiom)	giảm thiểu sự khác biệt
change one's mind	/tʃeɪndʒ wʌnz maɪnd/	(idiom)	thay đổi quan điểm
childcare	/'tʃaɪldkeə(r)/	(compound n.)	việc chăm sóc con cái
conservative	/kən'sɜ:vətɪv/	(adj.)	bảo thủ
disapproval	/,dɪsə'pru:vəl/	(n.)	sự phản đối, không tán thành
disrespect	/,dɪsrɪ'spekt/	(v)	không tôn trọng
experienced	/ɪk'spɪəriənst/	(adj.)	có kinh nghiệm
extended family	/ɪk'stendɪd 'fæməli/	(compound n.)	gia đình đa thế hệ
extracurricular activity	/,ekstrəkə'rɪkjələr æk' tɪvəti/	(compound n.)	hoạt động ngoại khóa
fashionable	/'fæʃənəbəl/	(adj.)	hợp thời trang, theo một
financial burden	/faɪ'nænʃl 'bɜ:dən/	(compound n.)	gánh nặng tài chính
follow in one's footsteps	/'fɒləʊ ɪn wʌnz 'fɒtstɛps/	(idiom)	theo bước, nối nghiệp
generation gap	/,dʒenə'reɪʃən ɡæp/	(compound n.)	khoảng cách giữa các thế hệ
homestay	/'həʊmsteɪ/	(n)	du lịch nghỉ tại nhà dân
impose ... (on sb)	/ɪm'pəʊz/	(v. phr.)	áp đặt cái gì vào ai
junk food	/'dʒʌŋk ,fu:d/	(compound n.)	đồ ăn vặt
multi-generational	/'mʌlti ,dʒenə'reɪʃənl/	(adj.)	đa thế hệ, nhiều thế hệ
nuclear family	/'nju:kliə 'fæməli/	(compound n.)	gia đình hạt nhân
objection	/əb'dʒekʃən/	(n.)	sự phản kháng
open-minded	/'əʊpən 'maɪndɪd/	(adj.)	cởi mở
outweigh	/,aʊt'weɪ/	(v)	vượt trội, nhiều hơn
perception	/pə'sepʃən/	(n.)	nhận thức
perspective	/pə'spektɪv/	(n.)	góc nhìn/ quan điểm
privacy	/'prɪvəsi/	(n.)	sự riêng tư
relaxation	/,ri:læk'seɪʃən/	(n.)	thư giãn, giải trí
responsible	/rɪ'spɒnsəbəl/	(adj.)	có trách nhiệm, chịu trách
nhiệm			
state-owned	/steɪt əʊnd/	(adj.)	thuộc về nhà nước
soft drink	/,sɒft 'drɪŋk/	(n.)	nước ngọt, đồ uống có ga
table manners	/'teɪbəl 'mænərz/	(compound n.)	cung cách ứng xử tại bàn ăn

taste in	/teɪst ɪn /	(n. phr.)	thị hiếu về, khiêu thẩm mỹ về
viewpoint	/'vju:ɔɪnt/	(n.)	quan điểm
work out	/wɜ:k aʊt/	(phr. v.)	tìm ra

## B. GRAMMAR REVIEW

### Modal Verbs: Must vs. Have to, Should vs. Ought to

#### I. Giới thiệu chung về động từ khuyết thiếu

##### 1. Cách sử dụng

Động từ khuyết thiếu được dùng để nêu lên khả năng thực hiện hành động, sự bắt buộc, khả năng xảy ra của sự việc, vv.

##### 2. Hình thức

- Theo sau chủ ngữ và đứng trước động từ nguyên thể không có “to”
- Không chia theo chủ ngữ (trừ trường hợp “have to”)
- Thêm “not” phía sau khi ở dạng phủ định (trừ trường hợp “have to”)

Ví dụ: I must go. (Tôi phải đi rồi.)

He should not disturb her now. (Anh ta không nên làm phiền cô ấy lúc này.)

#### II. So sánh must và have to

##### 1. Dạng khẳng định

- **Must:** Diễn tả sự cần thiết hay bắt buộc mang tính chủ quan (do người nói quyết định)

**S+ must + V**

Ví dụ: I must finish the exercises. (Tôi phải hoàn thành bài tập.)

Tình huống: Im going to have a party. (Tôi có ý định đi dự tiệc.)

- **Have to:** Diễn tả ý bắt buộc mang tính khách quan (do luật lệ, quy tắc hay người khác quyết định)

**S+ have to/ has to/ had to/ ... + V**

Ví dụ: I have to finish the exercises. (Tôi phải hoàn thành bài tập.)

Tình huống: Tomorrow is the deadline. (Ngày mai là hạn cuối.)

##### 2. Dạng phủ định

- **Must not:** Diễn tả ý cấm đoán

**S+ must not (mustn't) + V**

Ví dụ: You must not eat that. (Bạn không được phép ăn cái đó.)

Tình huống: It's already stale. (Nó đã bị thiu rồi.)

- **Not have to:** Diễn tả ý không cần phải làm gì

**S+ do not (don't)/ does not (doesn't) did not (didn't)/ will not (won't)/ ... + have to + V**



Ví dụ: You do not have to eat that. (Bạn không cần phải ăn thứ đó.)

Tình huống: I can see you dislike that. (Minh có thể thấy rằng bạn không thích nó.)

### III. So sánh should và ought to

#### 1. Dạng thức

##### 1.1 Dạng khẳng định:

**S+ should + V**

**S+ ought to + V**

Ví dụ: You should see a doctor if your cough gets worse. (Ông nên đi khám bác sĩ nếu bị ho nặng hơn.)

You ought to see a doctor if your cough gets worse. (Ông nên đi khám bác sĩ nếu bị ho nặng hơn.)

##### 1.2 Dạng phủ định:

**S+ should not (shouldn't) + V**

**S+ ought not to (oughtn't to) + V**

Ví dụ: Mrs. Smith shouldn't keep complaining. (Bà Smith không nên tiếp tục phàn nàn nữa.)

Mrs. Smith oughtn't to keep complaining. (Bà Smith không nên tiếp tục phàn nàn nữa.)

**Lưu ý:** Dạng thức phủ định của “ought to” không được sử dụng phổ biến bằng dạng thức phủ định của “should”

##### 1.3 Dạng nghi vấn:

**Should + S + V**

**Ought + S + to + V**

Ví dụ: Should we care about the environment? (Chúng ta có nên quan tâm tới môi trường không?)

Ought we to care about the environment? (Chúng ta có nên quan tâm tới môi trường không?)

**Lưu ý:** Dạng thức nghi vấn của “ought to” không được sử dụng phổ biến bằng dạng thức nghi vấn của “should”

#### 2. Cách sử dụng

**2.1 Điểm giống:** Cả “should” và “ought to” được sử dụng khi hỏi và đưa ra lời khuyên hoặc gợi ý.

Ví dụ: You should learn English every day. (Bạn nên học tiếng Anh hàng ngày.)

You ought to learn English every day. (Bạn nên học tiếng Anh hàng ngày.)

**2.2 Điểm khác:** Giữa “should” và “ought to” có sự khác biệt nhỏ trong sắc thái của lời khuyên.

<b>Should</b>	<b>Ought to</b>
Dùng cho lời khuyên mang tính chủ quan, thể hiện quan điểm cá nhân của người nói	Dùng với những lời khuyên mang yếu tố khách quan, tức là có sự tác động của ngoại cảnh như luật lệ, bổn phận hay quy tắc





9. attitude                      tight                      skinny                      rude  
 10. interact                      swear                      spit                      studious

**II. Complete the sentences using the given words.**

*mustn't                      don't have to                      should                      ought*

1. You \_\_\_\_\_ type your essay but if you want, you can do it.
2. I \_\_\_\_\_ go home too late. My parents are very strict.
3. She is an expert adviser; thus, I think you \_\_\_\_\_ to ask her for some advice.
4. You \_\_\_\_\_ ask your teacher if you don't understand the lesson.

*shouldn't                      have to                      ought not                      must*

5. I \_\_\_\_\_ finish homework before going to class. My teacher is rather strict.
6. We \_\_\_\_\_ show respect to our parents.
7. I think you \_\_\_\_\_ stay up late because it is not good for your health.
8. If you want to help your friend, you \_\_\_\_\_ to do her homework. Instead, you should show her how to do it by herself.

**III. Choose one of the two bold words which best completes the sentences.**

1. It's cold. You **should/shouldn't** turn on the fan.
2. You **ought not to/ought to** do homework before you go out with your friends.
3. You **should/shouldn't** eat plenty of fruit or vegetables every day in order to keep healthy.
4. You **must/mustn't** eat in the class.
5. You **ought to/ought not to** drink a lot of water every day.
6. I **must/have to** submit my homework before 12 o'clock because the deadline is 12 o'clock.
7. I **must/have to** stay at home to take care of my children.
8. My friend says: "You **don't have to/mustn't** drink champagne. You can have a coke or fruit juice instead.
9. You **don't have to/mustn't** drink if you're going to drive afterwards.
10. You **don't have to/mustn't** pick up Tom at the airport because Judy will pick him up.

**IV. Fill in the gaps with "must" and "have to". Use the negative form if necessary.**

1. Tomorrow is Mai's birthday. I \_\_\_\_\_ buy a present for her.
2. We might \_\_\_\_\_ leave earlier than we expected.
3. If you feel better, you \_\_\_\_\_ take medicine any more.
4. I \_\_\_\_\_ leave home at 6:00 because I have an appointment at 7:00.
5. You \_\_\_\_\_ eat a lot before doing the exercise. If you do, you might get into some trouble with your stomach.

6. We couldn't find a better present so we \_\_\_\_\_ choose this one.
7. If you are a member of the club, you \_\_\_\_\_ pay to use these facilities because they are included in the membership fee.
8. I had the flu, so I \_\_\_\_\_ stay in the bed for two days.
9. If you are under 18 years old, you \_\_\_\_\_ ride a motorbike.
10. All students \_\_\_\_\_ wear uniforms on Mondays.

**V. Choose the best options to fill in the blanks.**

1. You will get into trouble if you come back home after the \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. norm                      B. curfew                      C. value
2. She doesn't want to waste her money on clothes, so she ignores the \_\_\_\_\_ fashion trend.  
A. comfortable              B. current                      C. mature
3. When you ride a motorbike, you must \_\_\_\_\_ the general road rules.  
A. judge                      B. force                      C. obey
4. I decided to get my nose \_\_\_\_\_ last week.  
A. pierced                      B. forbade                      C. afforded
5. Instead of \_\_\_\_\_ someone by their appearance, you should get to know them better.  
A. swearing                      B. judging                      C. controlling
6. Having two children in a family is becoming the \_\_\_\_\_ in some Asian countries.  
A. norm                      B. privacy                      C. conflict
7. For a change, why don't you \_\_\_\_\_ your hair red?  
A. control                      B. force                      C. dye
8. My parents do not want me to wear \_\_\_\_\_ dresses because they think that they aren't suitable for my age.  
A. tight                      B. casual                      C. rude
9. I don't understand why you like \_\_\_\_\_ clothes. They are too bright and young for your age.  
A. flashy                      B. fashionable                      C. comfortable
10. She whispered a \_\_\_\_\_ that her sibling wouldn't die.  
A. sibiling                      B. burden                      C. prayer

**VI. Complete the following sentences using the given words.**

*elegant*                      *trivial*                      *compared*                      *forbid*  
*frustrating*                      *afford*                      *conflict*                      *interacts*

1. His conservative character would frequently bring him into \_\_\_\_\_ with others.
2. She is really beautiful in that \_\_\_\_\_ dress.

3. The challenges I must face were nothing \_\_\_\_\_ to yours.
4. It is \_\_\_\_\_ that I must be responsible for all what they did.
5. I have no time to care about such \_\_\_\_\_ things.
6. My parents \_\_\_\_\_ me to be rude to others.
7. It is really interesting to see how everyone \_\_\_\_\_ in the party.
8. It's hard to believe that she can \_\_\_\_\_ a new house on her salary.

**VII. Match each phrase on the left with its definition on the right.**

1. Extended family	A. A big family that includes not only the parents and children, but also grandparents, uncles, aunts and cousins, all living under the same roof.
2. Generation gap	B. A family that consists of parents and children.
3. Nuclear family	C. The difference in attitudes or behaviors between younger and older age groups, which can cause a lack of understanding.
4. Extracurricular activity	D. The rules of behavior that are typically accepted while people are eating at the table.
5. Viewpoint	E. An activity that can be done by students but not a part of school or college course.
6. Table manners	F. A person's opinion about the subjects.

**VIII. Fill in each blank with the correct form of the words in brackets.**

1. The elderly are more \_\_\_\_\_ about their eating habit.  
(CONSERVATIVELY)
2. They raised serious \_\_\_\_\_ to the proposal. (OBJECT)
3. Thanks to his \_\_\_\_\_, every misunderstanding is cleared up. (OPEN MINDED)
4. He shouldn't treat his parents \_\_\_\_\_. (DISRESPECT)
5. My wife is \_\_\_\_\_ for cooking meals. (RESPONSIBILITY)
6. Teenagers like catching up with \_\_\_\_\_ clothes, which puts a financial burden on their parents. (FASHION)
7. We are in need of \_\_\_\_\_ professionals for this subject. (EXPERIENCE)
8. There are at least three \_\_\_\_\_ living under the same roof in my family.  
(GENERATIONAL)

**IX. Complete the following sentences using the given words.**

*change your mind*                      *impose*                      *good taste in*  
*bridge the gap*                          *follows in*

1. If you want to succeed in that aspect, you must \_\_\_\_\_.
2. I don't want to \_\_\_\_\_ my decisions on my children.
3. Open communication can \_\_\_\_\_ between parents and children.
4. She \_\_\_\_\_ her mother's footsteps, becoming a doctor.
5. The fashion designer has exercised \_\_\_\_\_ her use of various colors and patterns.

*state-owned*                      *open-minded*                      *work out*  
*financial burden*                      *homestay*

6. She must shoulder the \_\_\_\_\_ after her husband's death.
7. Scientists are discussing to \_\_\_\_\_ the best solution to this problem.
8. We recommend \_\_\_\_\_ for students who want to live with local families.
9. Parents tend to be more \_\_\_\_\_ about the children's hairstyles.
10. After graduating from his university, he wants to have a job in a \_\_\_\_\_ company.

**X. Choose the best options to fill in the blanks.**

1. This plan can't be carried out because of the widespread public \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. relaxation                      B. disapproval                      C. perception
2. It is not \_\_\_\_\_ to wear these trousers at the moment.  
 A. experienced                      B. fashionable                      C. conservative
3. You should weigh up the pros and cons of the \_\_\_\_\_ living.  
 A. objection                      B. responsible                      C. multi-generational
4. It is important for parents to respect children's \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. privacy                      B. relaxation                      C. rudeness
5. The advantages of this plan \_\_\_\_\_ its disadvantages.  
 A. disrespect                      B. outweigh                      C. work out

**C. READING**

**I. Read and do the tasks below.**

The generation gap, which refers to a broad difference between one generation and another, especially between young people and their parents, usually leads to numerous conflicts. Such family conflicts can seriously threaten the relationship between parents and children at times.

It goes without saying that, however old their children are, parents still regard them as small kids and keep in mind that their **offspring** are too young to protect themselves cautiously or have wise choices. Therefore, they tend to make a great attempt to help their children to discover the outside world.

Nevertheless, they forget that as children grow up, they want to be more independent and develop their own identity by creating their own opinions, thoughts, styles and values about life.

One common issue that drives conflicts is the clothes of teenagers. While teens are keen on wearing fashionable clothes which try to catch up with the youth trends, parents who value traditional clothes believe that those kinds of attire violate the rules and the norms of the society. It becomes worse when the expensive brand name clothes teens choose seem to be beyond the financial capacity of parents.

Another reason contributing to conflicts is the interest in choosing a career path or education between parents and teenagers. Young people are told that they have the world at their feet and that dazzling future opportunities are just waiting for them to seize. However, their parents try to impose their choices of university or career on them regardless of their children's preference.

Indeed, conflicts between parents and children are the everlasting family phenomena. It seems that the best way to solve the matter is open communication to create mutual trust and understanding.

**Task 1. Decide whether the following statements are True, False or Not Given.**

1. According to the passage, the relationship between parents and children is not easily destroyed by the family conflicts.
2. As children get older, parents let them live on their own way and do what they are interested in.
3. Teenagers try to please their parents by wearing traditional clothes.
4. Parents want children to follow their wishes in deciding the education and future jobs.
5. Some parents indulge their children with expensive brand name clothes.
6. In order to bridge the gap between the old generation and the younger one, open communication to promote mutual understanding is the vital key.

**Task 2. Choose the best answers for the following questions.**

1. Why do most parents still treat their teenage children like small kids?
  - A. Because children usually make mistakes
  - B. Because they think that children are too young to live independently.
  - C. Because they think that children can't protect themselves well.
2. The word "offspring" in the second paragraph refers to \_\_\_\_.
  - A. parents
  - B. children
  - C. mind
3. What do parents usually do to help their children as they are young?
  - A. They prepare everything for their children.
  - B. They take care of their children carefully.

- C. They encourage their children to explore the outside world.
4. Which kinds of clothes do teenagers want to wear?  
 A. latest fashionable clothes      B. casual clothes      C. shiny trousers and tight tops
5. According to the passage, what are parents' viewpoints about the teenagers' clothes?  
 A. Teenagers' clothes get the latest teen fashion trends.  
 B. Teenagers' clothes are too short and ripped.  
 C. Teenagers' clothes are contrary to the accepted standards and values of the society.
6. Why do teenagers want to choose their university or career?  
 A. They want to explore the world on their own.  
 B. They want to decide their future by themselves.  
 C. Both A and B are correct.
7. The word "**seize**" in the fourth paragraph is closest in meaning to \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. catch      B. choose      C. find
8. Which can be the best title for the passage?  
 A. Where do parent-child conflicts come from?  
 B. How are children different from their parents?  
 C. How do we bridge the generation gap?

**II. Read Lan's letter about her family rules and select the best option for each blank.**

<i>do morning exercise</i>	<i>keep my room tidy</i>	<i>help around</i>
<i>respect</i>	<i>swear</i>	<i>go out</i>

88 Lang Street  
 Hanoi, Vietnam  
 June 12<sup>th</sup>, 2017

Dear Sam,

Hi! How are you? I'm overjoyed that you're going to stay with my family in one month. In the previous letter, you asked me about our family rules and now, I will tell you about them. Each family has its own rules and mine has a few. Here are some rules of my family. *My parents want me to* (1.)

\_\_\_\_\_ with the housework and other home duties as they think that all family members should share housework. **What's more**, *they tell me to* take my studies seriously. They said that learning is very important and it has great influence on my future. **Other rules** in my family are that I should (2.) \_\_\_\_\_ every day to stay fit and healthy and always (3.) \_\_\_\_\_. **Apart from these**, *I am not allowed*

to (4.) \_\_\_\_\_ late in the evening because this is dangerous. **Last but not least**, *they ask me* to (5.) \_\_\_\_\_ elderly and *forbid me to* (6.) \_\_\_\_\_. I think that family rules play an integral role in helping family members understand one another and improve their own behaviors. If you have any questions, please let me know. I hope you will enjoy your time in Vietnam. I'm looking forward to meeting you.

Lots of love,  
Lan

**III. Fill in each blank with one suitable word.**

*by*                      *differences*                      *generational*                      *younger*  
*comparison*                      *history*                      *because*                      *to*

**A generation gap**

A generation gap is a popular term used to describe big (1) \_\_\_\_\_ between people of a younger generation and their elders. This can be defined as occurring "when older and (2) \_\_\_\_\_

people do not understand each other (3) \_\_\_\_\_ of their different experiences, opinions, habits and behavior." Although some (4) \_\_\_\_\_ differences have existed throughout (5) \_\_\_\_\_, during this era differences between the two generations grew significantly in (6) \_\_\_\_\_ with previous times, particularly with respect (7) \_\_\_\_\_ such matters as musical tastes, fashion, drug use, culture and politics. This may have been magnified (8) \_\_\_\_\_ the unprecedented size of the young Baby Boomer generation, which gave it unprecedented power, influence, and willingness to rebel against social norms.

**D. WRITING**

**I. Complete the sentences without changing the meaning.**

1. They think that it is a good idea for me to do voluntary work. (I)  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. They insist that I should come home at 9 o'clock every night. (make)  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. It is very important for us to do well at school. (must)  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. It is not necessary for me to agree with everything my parents say. (not have)  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. My parents never let me forget to do my homework. (remind)  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. They always refuse to allow me to stay overnight at my friend's house. (never let)  
\_\_\_\_\_



---

7. My mother expects me to work as a teacher like her. (It is my mother's wish)

---

8. I can go out with my friends at the weekend. (allow)

---

**II. Rewrite each sentence using the word(s) in the brackets, without changing its meaning.**

1. If I were you, I would spend more time talking with my children. (should)

---

2. John doesn't get permission to use that computer. (mustn't)

---

3. It is necessary that people who work here leave by 6 p.m. (must)

---

4. Every staff isn't allowed to smoke or eat in the office. (mustn't)

---

5. Customers are advised to check their luggage before leaving the airport. (ought to)

---

6. It is forbidden for students to cheat in the exam. (mustn't)

---

7. Ms. Ly is in charge of cleaning the floor every day. (has to)

---

8. You are not allowed to take photographs in the museum. (mustn't)

---

9. It would be a good idea for you to share the housework with your mother. (ought to)

---

10. It is not necessary for Jack to call Ben today. (doesn't have to)

---

**PART 3: TEST YOURSELF**

**A. PHONETICS**

**I. Choose the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from that of the others in each group.**

- |                       |                    |                    |                     |
|-----------------------|--------------------|--------------------|---------------------|
| 1. A. <u>a</u> dopt   | B. <u>i</u> nvolve | C. <u>s</u> troll  | D. <u>f</u> ollow   |
| 2. A. <u>e</u> xist   | B. <u>m</u> ind    | C. <u>i</u> nspire | D. <u>pr</u> ovide  |
| 3. A. <u>r</u> efusal | B. <u>m</u> usic   | C. <u>s</u> tudent | D. <u>st</u> udying |

4. A. lecturer            B. medium            C. inventor            D. president  
 5. A. teach            B. cheer            C. characterize            D. watch

**II. Pick out the words whose main stressed syllable is different from the rest.**

1. A. actor            B. commit            C. fashion            D. motion  
 2. A. education            B. industrial            C. intelligent            D. traditional  
 3. A. industry            B. refugee            C. magazine            D. Japanese  
 4. A. freedom            B. contact            C. furnish            D. disturb  
 5. A. independence            B. impractical            C. education            D. entertainment

**B. VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR**

**I. Fill in each blank with the given word.**

*nuclear family*                      *generation gap*                      *hairstyle*  
*school children*                      *junk food*

1. Why is there a \_\_\_\_\_ between parents and children?  
 2. Why are soft drinks and \_\_\_\_\_ not good for our health?  
 3. Do you think \_\_\_\_\_ should wear uniforms?  
 4. Is the \_\_\_\_\_ the perfect type of family?  
 5. Have your parents ever complained about your \_\_\_\_\_?

**II. Complete the following sentences. Use affirmative or negative of "must".**

1. You \_\_\_\_\_ study harder to get better marks.  
 2. The boy is only twelve years old. He \_\_\_\_\_ ride a motorbike.  
 3. Jimmy, you \_\_\_\_\_ bite nails.  
 4. My classmate is very ill. She \_\_\_\_\_ see a doctor as soon as possible.  
 5. Your hands are dirty. You \_\_\_\_\_ wash them before meal.  
 6. We \_\_\_\_\_ brush our teeth at least once a day.  
 7. Children \_\_\_\_\_ play with dangerous objects like knives and matches.  
 8. Students \_\_\_\_\_ use mobile phones during the test.  
 9. Babies \_\_\_\_\_ go to bed early.  
 10. You \_\_\_\_\_ be impolite to elderly people.

**III. Complete the following sentences. Use affirmative or negative of "have to".**

1. Secretaries \_\_\_\_\_ answer the phone. That is a part of their job.  
 2. Jason and Linda are on holiday. They \_\_\_\_\_ go to school today  
 3. He \_\_\_\_\_ come if he doesn't want to join with us.

4. You \_\_\_\_\_ worry about me! I am ok now.
5. Lam \_\_\_\_\_ leave her house at 6.30 a.m. in order to get to her school at 7 a.m.
6. All the students \_\_\_\_\_ obey the school rules.
7. Today she doesn't have the literature lesson, so she \_\_\_\_\_ bring her literature book.
8. I \_\_\_\_\_ take these books back to the school library on time or I will get a fine.
9. There is a lift in this building, so we \_\_\_\_\_ climb the stairs.
10. Susan doesn't like her new job. Sometimes she \_\_\_\_\_ work at weekends.

**IV. Complete the following sentences. Use affirmative or negative of "ought to".**

1. You \_\_\_\_\_ study harder to get better marks.
2. They \_\_\_\_\_ be angry. It isn't good for their health.
3. A: It's so cold.  
B: You \_\_\_\_\_ put on your thick coat before going out.
4. If somebody steals your wallet, you \_\_\_\_\_ tell the police.
5. You \_\_\_\_\_ buy that meat. It doesn't look fresh enough.
6. She \_\_\_\_\_ stay up too late at night as she may feel tired in the morning.
7. Candidates \_\_\_\_\_ wear shorts and a T-shirt to a job interview.
8. It's raining. If you don't want your dress to get wet, you \_\_\_\_\_ take an umbrella.
9. You are driving too fast. You \_\_\_\_\_ slow down.
10. Lisa \_\_\_\_\_ treat her younger sister badly. It makes her very unhappy.

**V. Choose the incorrect underlined part in the following sentences.**

1. You (A) have to (B) made sure that children (C) don't play outside alone.
2. You (A) mustn't (B) uses the motorbike without a driver's license. It's (C) against the law.
3. Drivers (A) haven't (B) to stop at (C) yellow traffic lights.
4. You (A) ought (B) to taking him (C) to the emergency room.
5. During the lesson, (A) does you (B) have (C) to listen to your teacher carefully and take notes quickly.
6. Students (A) don't have to (B) consume (C) food or drink in the class or in the library.
7. Get out of the grass! (A) You (B) must walk on the grass (C) here.
8. The baby (A) is sleeping. (B) You (C) don't have to shout.
9. Lien, we (A) must (B) are (C) quicker or we will miss the last train to Hai Phong city.
10. You (A) have to (B) feed the dog. (C) I've already fed it.

## VI. Cross out the wrong part in the following sentences.

1. You **don't have to/ must** eat anything you don't like.
2. If you don't want to have a sore throat, you **don't have to/ oughtn't** to drink too much iced water.
3. Flight attendants **have to/ mustn't** take care of passengers on the plane.
4. During the lesson, students **don't have to/ mustn't** leave class without the teacher's permission.
5. Her mother cooks for her, so she herself **doesn't have to/mustn't** cook.
6. Smokers **don't have to/ mustn't** smoke in public places. This is stated in a new law.
7. Drinks are free for today. It means that you **don't have to/mustn't** pay money for drinks today.
8. Kelvin won the lottery last year, so he **doesn't have to/mustn't** work now.
9. According to the company regulations, staff **have to/ must** finish their work with highest efficiency.
10. To be healthy, we **mustn't/ ought to** eat healthful food and do the exercise regularly.

## C. READING

### I. Read the text and do the following task.

#### Types of Families

A family is a group of people that have a common ancestor. They usually live together in the same house. Although it is a fact that not all families are the same, they can be categorized into different types.

A nuclear family consists of parents and their children living together. In many countries in Europe and North American this is the most common form of family. There are three types of nuclear families. In the first type the father works and the mother cares for the children. In the second type, the mother works and the father stays at home with the children. In the third type of family, both parents work. This last type of family is the most common in the USA and Canada.

In an extended family, different family members such as grandparents, aunts, uncles and cousins live together. In many areas of the world, such as Asia, the Middle East, Africa, Latin America, and Southern Europe, this type of family is common.

Recently in some countries, couples are choosing to have only one child. These types of families are called single child families. Some people believe that children raised in these kinds of families are spoilt, selfish and lonely. But research doesn't support this.

Some families have no children at all. The couples that make up these families sometimes make the choice not to have children because they want to have more free time. Some couples choose not to have children for financial reasons.

Families with only one parent are called single parent families. There are several causes of these types of families. The first reason is divorce. Another reason is that the one of the parent dies, leaving the surviving parent widowed. Additionally, some parents never get married in the first place.

When the husband or wife in a marriage brings children with them from a past marriage, this is called a blended or reconstituted family. This type of family has become more common due to the increase in divorces. For some children this kind of family can be good because there are two parents, instead of just one. But there can also be some difficulties as the two new families try to become one.

As the basis of all societies, families of all types are very important. This is true now and will be true in the future as well.

*Match each description of a family on the left with a type of family on the right.*

1. Two years ago Darrel and Tanya got married. Before they got married Darrel had three sons and Tanya had a daughter. Now they all live together.	Childless Family
2. Hiroshi's wife died several years ago of cancer. He now raises his two sons Tomo and Taiki by himself.	Blended Family
3. Jose and Maria live with their 3 children. They also live with their parents, an uncle and an aunt.	Single Child Family
4. Husband and wife Dalee and Meegung have been married for two years. They are both very successful business people and don't have any children.	Nuclear Family
5. Harry and his wife Jane have been married for six years. They have one daughter named Melissa.	Extended Family
6. Jack and Betty, who have been married for over 15 years, have two children named Daniel and Chirstine.	Single Parent Family

## **II. Read the text and answer the questions.**

Teenagers today are undergoing lots of changes. They are between the ages of 13 to 19. Many of them are undergoing physical and emotional changes. These are the stages in the teenagers that are unavoidable.

The teenage life is full of happiness, sadness, enjoyment and it can be interesting too. This is because in the teenage life that a teenager is subjected to physical growth, hormonal changes and even dilemmas. They may be in a stage of conflict like undergoing puppy love. This is only a normal part of life.

Making friends is part and parcel of a teenager's life. The teenager should enjoy life by making friends with peers and participate in healthy activities such as camping, picnic, kayaking, swimming and so on. Through friends, a teenager learns to joke, laugh and play to release stress and tension. By making friends, the teenager learns to sweeten his or her joys and even eases the bitterness of life's downtime.

Many teenagers are very conscious of their physical outlook. It is at this part of their life that beauty strikes as the main self-image. They love to follow up with the latest trends for dressing, hairstyle and even

look good with their physical image. Some girls and boys go on a crash diet to slim down in order to look attractive. Others may suffer from acne and pimples that may scar their external beauty.

Another stage in a teenager is the teenager's love life. There are chemical changes in the body and so the teenager tends to have a sense of feelings for the opposite sex. They will experience love and rejection. These sometimes will affect their studies.

Parents tend to play a role in a teenager's life. Parents today are overly concern over their children's well-being. They like to control their freedom and have a say what the teenagers do. Hence, we have cases of disagreements, disputes, quarrels and even runaways from homes among some teenage girls.

There are also negative problems that may pop out during a teenage life. A teenager is not well guided may fall into the wrong path. Some teenagers are involved in drugs trafficking, smoking, drinking and smuggling of illegal products into the country. Others tend to vent their anger by vandalizing public property. We have those with no regard and respect for the elders.

The mass media has an influence over the lives of many teenagers. Violent action movies, obscene shows and pornography surfed from the Internet can bring a disastrous effect on a teenager's life. There will be more harm than good if nothing is done.

1. *From paragraph 1*

- (a) What is the age range of a teenager?
  - (b) What are the changes that a teenager undergoes?
- 
- 

2. *From paragraph 2*

- (a) Why is it that a teenage life is full of ups and downs?
  - (b) What kind of conflict does a teenage face?
- 
- 

3. *From paragraph 3*

List activities that a teenager can get involved in.

---

---

4. *From paragraph 4*

What are the things that a teenager likes to keep up to date with?

---

---

5. *From paragraph 8*

State why parents are worried about their teenagers. Answer in your own words.

---

---

---

**III. Read an article about how to make a list of family rules and answer reading comprehension questions.**

**Family Rules**

Would you like to have a boss who didn't specify what the rules were in your work place but punished you if you broke these unknown rules? You would feel pretty frustrated, wouldn't you? That's how children feel when they are punished for breaking rules that have never been explained to them. Family rules are necessary to make clear what is expected of children and to outline punishments for misbehavior and rewards for good behavior.

When creating a list of family rules remember to be specific both in what is expected and the punishment or reward. Gather the family together when creating the list of family rules. Involve children in the creation of the rules and get their input as to appropriate rewards or punishments. Explain to children why you'd like to include certain rules. They'll accept them more if they understand that they are for their own benefit and safety.

You can create the list of rules in the form of a contract which all family members sign. Before completing the contract make sure that all family members are in agreement as to the wording of the rules and the punishments or rewards for each rule.

Once the rules have been created, remember to be consistent with their enforcement. The list of rules doesn't mean anything unless it is consistently enforced.

1. Why do we need a list of family rules?

---

2. Why should we explain to children the reason behind the rules?

---

3. Who should sign the family rules contract?

---

4. What could happen if you don't consistently enforce the rules?

---

**IV. Read and fill in the blanks.**

*recognize*                      *dangers*                      *generation*                      *acting*                      *understand*  
*individuals*                      *according*                      *along*                      *control*                      *teens*

(1. \_\_\_\_\_) to the results of a survey in USA WEEKEND Magazine, there isn't really a generation gap. The magazine's "Teens & Parents" survey shows that today's generation of young



people generally get (2. \_\_\_\_\_) well with their parents and appreciate the way they're being raised. Most feel that their parents (3. \_\_\_\_\_) them, and they believe their parents consider family as the No. 1 priority in their lives. Although more than a third of (4. \_\_\_\_\_) have something in their rooms they would like to keep secret from their parents, it is usually nothing more harmful than a diary or a CD.

Such results may seem surprising in the context of the violent events that people hear about in the media. Maybe because of the things they hear, parents worry that their own kids might get out of (5. \_\_\_\_\_) once they reach the teenage years. However, the facts in the survey should make us feel better. The survey shows us that today's teens are loving and sensible. They are certainly happier than the angry people in the teenage stereotypes we all know about. True, some teenagers are very angry, and we need to (6. \_\_\_\_\_) their needs, but the great majority of teens are not like that at all.

In contrast to some stereotypes, most teens believe they must be understanding about differences among (7. \_\_\_\_\_). Many of them volunteer for community service with disadvantaged people. When they talk about themselves, their friends and their families, they sound positive and proud. Generally, these are very nice kids.

Is this spirit of harmony a change from the past? Only a generation ago, parent child relations were described as the "(8. \_\_\_\_\_) gap". Yet even then, things were not so bad. Most kids in the 1960s and 1970s shared their parents' basic values.

Perhaps, however, it is true that American families are growing closer at the beginning of this new millennium. Perhaps there is less to fight about, and the (9. \_\_\_\_\_) of drug abuse and other unacceptable behavior are now well known. Perhaps, compared to the impersonal world outside the home, a young person's family is like a friendly shelter, not a prison. And perhaps parents are (10. \_\_\_\_\_) more like parents than they did 20 or 30 years ago.

#### **D. WRITING**

##### **I. Rewrite the following sentences and add the available modal verbs to the appropriate position.**

1. If you go swimming in the sea, you wear a life jacket. (ought to)

---

2. I will tell you my secret, but you tell anyone. (mustn't)

---

3. You spend too much time playing computer games. You stop that. (must)

---

4. Phuong loves chocolate, but she eat too much, or she will gain weight. (oughtn't to)

---

5. We wear helmets when we ride a motorbike. (have to)

---

6. I book the tickets in advance. (don't have to)

---

7. Alia, you say rude words like that. (mustn't)

---

8. We play table tennis. We can play chess instead. (don't have to)

---

9. Children put their hands into sockets. That is very dangerous. (mustn't)

---

10. Doctors sometimes work at the weekends and on national holidays. (have to)

---

**II. Rewrite sentences with the same meaning as sentences given, using the given words and the correct form of modal verbs in parentheses.**

1. I advise him to stop wasting money on lottery. (ought to)

He

---

—

2. It's necessary for you to finish your homework before going to bed. (must)

You

---

3. It isn't necessary for you to bring food and drink for lunch. (have to)

You

---

4. Fishing is not allowed in this park. (must)

You

---

5. Every receptionist in our hotel is obliged to wear a uniform. (have to)

Every receptionist in our hotel

---

6. It's forbidden to sell cigarettes to children. (must not)

Shops

---

7. It's optional for waiters to wear a tie. (have to)

Waiters

---

8. His doctor advises him not to drink too much alcohol. (ought to)

He

---

9. It's obligatory for every employee to keep the company's information secret. (have to)

Every employee

---

10. Teachers advise me to study English to get a good job. (ought to)

I

---

## Unit 2. RELATIONSHIPS

### PART 1: VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR REVIEW

#### A. VOCABULARY

argument	/'ɑ:gjumənt/	(n.)	sự tranh cãi, sự tranh luận
relationship	/rɪ'leɪŋʃɪp/	(n.)	mối quan hệ, mối liên hệ
romantic relationship	/rəʊ'mæntɪk rɪ'leɪŋʃɪp/	(n. phr.)	mối quan hệ lãng mạn
be in a relationship	/bi ɪn ə rɪ'leɪŋʃɪp/	(v. phr.)	hẹn hò, có mối quan hệ tình cảm
betray	/bɪ'treɪ/	(v.)	phản bội, lừa dối, phụ lòng tin
break up (with someone)	/breɪk ʌp/	(phr. v.)	chia tay
concentrate (on)	/'kɒnsntreɪt/	(v)	tập trung
counsellor	/'kaʊnsələ(r)/	(n.)	người khuyên bảo, cố vấn
date	/deɪt/	(n.)	cuộc hẹn hò, sự hẹn gặp
emotional	/'ɪməʊʃənl/	(adj.)	cảm động, cảm xúc
lend an ear	/lend ən ɪə(r)/	(v. phr.)	lắng nghe và thấu hiểu
opposite-sex	/'ɒpəzɪt seks/	(adj.)	khác giới
quit school	/kwɪt sku:l/	(v. phr.)	bỏ học
reconcile (with someone)	/'reknsaɪl/	(v)	làm hòa, giảng hòa
single-sex school sinh,	/'sɪŋgl seks sku:l/	(n. phr.)	trường học một giới (trường nữ  trường nam sinh)

sympathetic	/,sɪmpə'tetɪk/	(adj.)	đồng cảm, thông cảm
achievement	/ə'tʃi:vmənt/	(n.)	thành tích, thành tựu
appearance	/ə'piərəns/	(n.)	diện mạo, vẻ bề ngoài
community	/kə'mju:nəti/	(n.)	cộng đồng
confidence	/'kɒnfɪdəns/	(n.)	sự tin tưởng, sự tin cậy
contribution	/,kɒntri'bju:ʃn/	(n.)	sự đóng góp
engage (tình	/ɪn'geɪdʒ/	(v.)	thu hút (sự chú ý...), giành được cảm...)
enthusiastic	/ɪn,θju:zi'æstɪk/	(adj.)	nhật tình, hào hứng
initiative	/'ɪnɪʃətɪv/	(n.)	bước khởi đầu, sự khởi xướng
matchmaking	/'mætʃmeɪkɪŋ/	(n.)	sự làm mối
on good terms (with someone)	/ɒn gʊd tɜ:mz/	(idiom)	có quan hệ tốt với ai
oppose	/ə'pəʊz/	(v.)	chống đối, phản đối
permission	/pə'mɪʃn/	(n.)	sự cho phép, sự chấp nhận
persuade	/pə'sweɪd/	(v.)	thuyết phục
potential	/pə'tenʃl/	(adj.)	tiềm năng, tiềm tàng
psychologist	/saɪ'kɒlədʒɪst/	(n.)	nhà tâm lý học
reaction	/'ri:ækʃn/	(n.)	sự phản ứng
tension thăng	/'tenʃn/	(n)	sự căng thẳng, tình trạng căng
turn into	/tɜ:n 'ɪntu:/	(phr. v.)	biến thành, trở thành

## B. GRAMMAR REVIEW

### B.1. ĐỘNG TỪ NỐI (LINKING VERBS)

#### I. Định nghĩa động từ nối

Động từ nối (Linking verbs) là các động từ:

+ Không mô tả hành động của chủ ngữ.

+ Nối chủ ngữ với một tính từ hoặc danh từ giúp mô tả hoặc nhận dạng chủ ngữ này.

Cấu trúc câu với động từ nối:

**Subject + linking verb + adjective/ noun**

Ví dụ 1: The flowers look beautiful. (Những bông hoa đó nhìn đẹp đấy.)

Trong đó: The flowers (chủ ngữ), look (động từ nối), beautiful (tính từ).

Ví dụ 2: Shes an actress. (Cô ấy là một diễn viên.)

Trong đó: She (chủ ngữ), 's (động từ nối), an actress (danh từ).

## II. Các động từ nối phổ biến

### 1. Động từ “to be”

Động từ “to be” là động từ nối phổ biến nhất trong tiếng Anh.

Ví dụ 1: The firework displays are amazing. (Những tràng pháo hoa đó thật ấn tượng.)

Trong đó: The firework displays (chủ ngữ), are (động từ nối), amazing (tính từ).

Ví dụ 2: They were friends. (Họ đã là những người bạn.)

Trong đó: They (chủ ngữ), were (động từ nối), friends (danh từ).

### 2. Một số động từ nối khác

#### a. feel, smell, taste, look, sound

Động từ nối	Ví dụ
feel “cảm thấy”	I felt excited during the trip. (Tôi đã cảm thấy thích thú trong suốt cuộc hành trình.)
smell “có mùi”	The cakes smell good. (Những chiếc bánh có mùi thơm.)
taste “có vị”	This pizza tastes delicious. (Chiếc bánh pizza này có vị ngon.)
look “nhìn thế nào trong ra sao”	Nancy looks radiant in her dress (Nancy trông thật rạng rỡ trong bộ váy của cô ấy.)
sound “nghe có vẻ”	Her voice sounds pleasant. (Giọng của cô ấy nghe dễ chịu.)

#### b. get, become, turn, grow đều mang nghĩa “trở nên/ trở thành”

Động từ nối	Ví dụ
get	Nancy is getting taller this year. (Năm nay Nancy đang dần cao hơn.)
become	John became a senior manager. (John đã trở thành một quản lý cấp cao.)
turn	The weather has turned hot. (Thời tiết đã chuyển sang oi nóng.)
grow	My mom grows older each year. (Mỗi năm mẹ tôi lại càng già hơn.)

#### c. seem, appear, stay, remain

Động từ nối	Ví dụ
seem “có vẻ/ dường như”	Her father seems angry. (Bố cô ấy có vẻ giận dữ.)
appear	He appears a perfect husband.

“có vẻ/ dường như”	(Anh ấy có vẻ là một người chồng hoàn hảo.)
stay “vẫn cứ/ vẫn là”	He stays faithful to his dead wife. (Anh ấy vẫn chung thủy với người vợ quá cố của mình.)
remain “vẫn cứ/ vẫn là”	They remain friends after years. (Họ vẫn là bạn sau nhiều năm.)

### III. Một số lưu ý với động từ nối trong tiếng Anh

#### 1. Lưu ý 1

Các động từ nối (ngoại trừ <b>to be, seem, become</b> chỉ có thể là các động từ nối)	
Khi là động từ nối	Khi là động từ chỉ hoạt động
Diễn tả <u>trạng thái</u> của chủ thể	Diễn tả <u>hành động</u> của chủ thể

Ví dụ 1: The soup tastes good. (Món súp này có vị ngon.)

Trong đó: The soup (chủ ngữ), tastes (động từ nối), good (tính từ).

Ví dụ 2: She is tasting the soup. (Cô ấy đang nếm món súp.)

Trong đó: She (chủ ngữ), tasting (động từ chỉ hoạt động), the soup (danh từ).

#### 2. Lưu ý 2

Các động từ nối (ngoại trừ <b>to be, seem, become</b> chỉ có thể là các động từ nối)	
Khi là động từ nối	Khi là động từ chỉ hoạt động
<u>Không thể</u> dùng với trạng từ chỉ cách thức	<u>Có thể</u> dùng với trạng từ chỉ cách thức

Ví dụ 1: She appeared surprised at the news. (Cô ấy có vẻ ngạc nhiên trước tin đó.)

Trong đó: She (chủ ngữ), appeared (động từ nối), surprised (tính từ).

Ví dụ 2: A fairy appeared suddenly before him. (Một cô tiên đột nhiên xuất hiện trước mặt anh ấy.)

Trong đó: A fairy (chủ ngữ), appeared (động từ chỉ hoạt động), suddenly (trạng từ chỉ cách thức).

### B.2. Cấu trúc câu nhấn mạnh với “It” (Cleft sentence) (Câu chẻ)

#### I. Cách sử dụng câu nhấn mạnh với “It”

Câu nhấn mạnh với “It” là câu được dùng để nhấn mạnh một thành phần của câu như chủ ngữ, tân ngữ hay trạng ngữ.

Ví dụ: My mother taught Nancy to cook yesterday. (Mẹ mình dạy Nancy nấu ăn vào ngày hôm qua.)

Trong đó: My mother (chủ ngữ), Nancy (tân ngữ), yesterday (trạng ngữ).

#### II. Các cấu trúc câu nhấn mạnh với “It”

##### 1. Cấu trúc câu nhấn mạnh với “It” khi muốn nhấn mạnh chủ ngữ

**It + to be + focus + that/who + V**

Trong đó: **It** luôn đứng đầu câu. Động từ “**to be**” chia theo **It** và thì của động từ trong câu gốc, Chủ ngữ được nhấn mạnh (focus) có thể là danh từ hoặc đại từ. Đại từ that dùng sau danh từ chỉ người/ vật còn **who** chỉ dùng sau danh từ chỉ người. Động từ trong mệnh đề sau **that/ who** được chia theo câu gốc.

Ví dụ:

Câu gốc: Casey helps children at the local orphanage. (Casey giúp trẻ em ở trại trẻ mồ côi của địa phương.)

Trong đó: Casey (chủ ngữ), children (tân ngữ), at the local orphanage (trạng ngữ).

Câu nhấn mạnh với “It” khi muốn nhấn mạnh chủ ngữ Casey là:

It is Casey that helps children at the local orphanage.

It is Casey who helps children at the local orphanage.

(Chính Casey là người giúp đỡ những trẻ em ở trại trẻ mồ côi của địa phương.)

## 2. Cấu trúc câu nhấn mạnh với “It” khi muốn nhấn mạnh tân ngữ

**It + to be + focus + that/who + S + V**

Trong đó: **It** luôn đứng đầu câu. Động từ “**to be**” chia theo **It** và thì của động từ trong câu gốc. Tân ngữ được nhấn mạnh (focus) có thể là danh từ hoặc đại từ. Đại từ that dùng sau danh từ chỉ người/ vật còn **who** chỉ dùng sau danh từ chỉ người. **S** và **V** chính là chủ ngữ và động từ trong câu gốc.

Ví dụ: Câu gốc: We are meeting Mary tomorrow. (Ngày mai chúng tôi gặp Mary.)

Trong đó: We (chủ ngữ), Mary (tân ngữ), tomorrow (trạng ngữ).

Câu nhấn mạnh với “It” khi muốn nhấn mạnh tân ngữ Mary là:

It is Mary that we are meeting tomorrow.

It is Mary who we are meeting tomorrow.

(Chính Mary là người chúng tôi sẽ gặp vào ngày mai.)

## 3. Cấu trúc câu nhấn mạnh với “It” khi muốn nhấn mạnh trạng ngữ

**It + to be + focus + that + S + V**

Trong đó: **It** luôn đứng đầu câu. Động từ “**to be**” chia theo **It** và thì của động từ trong câu gốc. Trạng ngữ được nhấn mạnh (focus) có thể là trạng ngữ/ cụm trạng ngữ chỉ thời gian/ nơi chốn. Đại từ **that** luôn sử dụng trong cấu trúc này. **S** và **V** chính là chủ ngữ và động từ trong câu gốc.

Ví dụ: Câu gốc: She became a famous singer at the age of 18. (Cô ấy đã trở thành ca sĩ nổi tiếng khi 18 tuổi.)

Trong đó: She (chủ ngữ), a famous singer (bổ ngữ), at the age of 18 (trạng ngữ).

Câu nhấn mạnh với “It” khi muốn nhấn mạnh trạng ngữ at the age of 18 là:

It was at the age of 18 that she became a famous singer.



(Ở độ tuổi 18, cô ấy đã trở thành ca sĩ nổi tiếng.)

### III. Thực hành câu nhấn mạnh với “It”

#### 1. Ví dụ thứ nhất

Câu gốc: Linda borrowed my motorbike last week. (Linda đã mượn xe máy của mình vào tuần trước.)

Câu nhấn mạnh với “It”: It is Linda that borrowed my motorbike last week.

→ Câu nhấn mạnh này sai ở động từ “to be” is.

Sửa lại: It was Linda that borrowed my motorbike last week.

It was Linda who borrowed my motorbike last week.

(Chính Linda là người đã mượn xe máy của mình vào tuần trước.)

#### 2. Ví dụ thứ hai

Câu gốc: Mary always lends an ear to Linda. (Mary luôn luôn lắng nghe và thấu hiểu Linda.)

Câu nhấn mạnh với “It”: It is Mary that Linda always lends an ear to.

→ Câu nhấn mạnh này sai ở vị trí của hai từ Mary và Linda.

Sửa lại: It is Linda that Mary always lends an ear to.

It is Linda who Mary always lends an ear to.

(Chính Linda là người Mary luôn luôn lắng nghe và thấu hiểu.)

#### 3. Ví dụ thứ ba

Câu gốc: John proposed to Laura at an elegant restaurant. (John đã cầu hôn Laura ở một nhà hàng thanh lịch.)

Câu nhấn mạnh với “It”: It was at an elegant restaurant that John proposed to Laura.

(Chính tại một nhà hàng thanh lịch John đã cầu hôn Laura.)

Câu nhấn mạnh này đúng.

#### Cấu trúc tổng quát câu nhấn mạnh với “It”

**It + to be + focus + that/ who + S + V**

**It + to be + focus + that/ who + V**

Trong đó, **that** có thể dùng sau danh từ chỉ người/ vật còn **who** chỉ dùng sau danh từ chỉ người.

### PART 2: EXERCISES

#### A. PHONETICS

##### I. Choose the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from the others.

- 1 A. achievement    B. appearance    C. enthusiastic    D. initiative
- 2 A. confidence    B. achievement    C. engage    D. permission
3. A. potential    B. psychologist    C. oppose    D. contribution

4. A. initiative      B. confidence      C. enthusiastic      D. tension  
 5. A. reaction      B. achievement      C. matchmaking      D. enthusiastic

**II. Choose the word that differs from the other three in the position of primary stress.**

1. A. commercial      B. constructive      C. essential      D. national  
 2. A. copy      B. remove      C. notice      D. cancel  
 3. A. curriculum      B. economics      C. hesitation      D. calculation  
 4. A. interact      B. specify      C. illustrate      D. fertilize  
 5. A. territorial      B. economic      C. considerate      D. continental  
 6. A. realistic      B. oceanic      C. economy      D. biology  
 7. A. prediction      B. rehearsal      C. essential      D. industry  
 8. A. maximum      B. vacancy      C. terrorist      D. investment  
 9. A. vertical      B. contractual      C. domestic      D. outstanding  
 10. A. emergency      B. alternative      C. expensively      D. geothermal

**B. VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR**

**I. Match the word/ phrase with its definition.**

1. romantic relationship	A. to listen to someone with patience and sympathy
2. lend an ear	B. kind to people who are hurt or sad, showing that you understand and care about their problems
3. sympathetic	C. a relationship based on love and emotional attraction
4. argument	D. to end a relationship, a company, etc.
5. break up (with someone)	E. become friends again after conflicts or arguments
6. be reconciled (with someone)	F. a conversation or discussion in which people disagree, often angrily

**II. Fill in each blank with the correct form of the word in the bracket.**

1. My teacher is very caring and \_\_\_\_\_. (SYMPHATHY)  
 2. She had an argument with one of her close friend, but she's managed to be \_\_\_\_\_ with her. (RECONCILIATION)  
 3. When you have a romantic relationship, you're having a relationship based on love and \_\_\_\_\_ attraction. (EMOTION)  
 4. I thought my friend \_\_\_\_\_ my trust when she told others my secret. (BETRAY)

5. My parents always worry that I am in a \_\_\_\_\_ with Nam, my close friend.  
(RELATION)

6. My best friend and I had an \_\_\_\_\_ because she had revealed my secret.  
(ARGUE)

7. My parents and teachers are always telling me that I have to \_\_\_\_\_ on my study. (CONCENTRATION)

**III. Choose the right words to describe the pictures.**

*break up (with someone)*







*be in a relationship*

*lend an ear*

*concentrate on*

*argument*

*single-sex school*

<p>1.</p>  <p>_____</p>	<p>2.</p>  <p>_____</p>	<p>3.</p>  <p>_____</p>
<p>4.</p>  <p>_____</p>	<p>5.</p>  <p>_____</p>	<p>6.</p>  <p>_____</p>

**IV. Choose and fill in the blanks with correct words.**

*potential*

*tension*

*reactions*

*oppose*

*a romantic relationship*

*permission*

*on good terms*

*psychologist*

1. In my class, the girls are \_\_\_\_\_ with all the boys except me.

2. We need to get our parents' \_\_\_\_\_ to take part in the English Speaking Contest in Hanoi next month.

3. They will select \_\_\_\_\_ matches and help the two people meet face to face.

4. He was not willing to talk to a \_\_\_\_\_.

5. Does the counselor agree with Ha's \_\_\_\_\_?

6. The \_\_\_\_\_ between Minh and his parents is because they always judge his friends by their appearances.

7. My grandmother thinks friendship between a boy and a girl will turn into \_\_\_\_\_.

8. Should parents strongly \_\_\_\_\_ their children's romantic relationships?

**V. Put the given words into the right column.**

*become*                      *seem*                      *remain*                      *taste*                      *jump*  
*sound*                      *dance*                      *feel*                      *run*                      *laugh*  
*grow*                      *climb*                      *are*                      *smell*

Action Verbs	Linking verbs	Both

**VI. Complete the sentences using the given words.**

*become*                      *appears*                      *sounds*                      *grow*  
*felt*                      *seemed*                      *looks*                      *getting*

1. She \_\_\_\_\_ so beautiful in that white dress.
2. A: What about going to the Italian restaurant?  
B: That \_\_\_\_\_ great!
3. She wants to \_\_\_\_\_ a fashion designer like Victoria Beckham in the future.
4. I \_\_\_\_\_ painful in my stomach after eating that cake.
5. It \_\_\_\_\_ interesting that he didn't like anything except that bowl
6. Teenagers like to make their own choice when they \_\_\_\_\_ older.
7. Turn on the fan. It is \_\_\_\_\_ hotter and hotter.
8. That Super Junior \_\_\_\_\_ suddenly at the end of concert makes its fans overjoyed.

**VII. Decide whether the bold part in each of the following sentences is an “action verb” or a “linking verb”.**

1. July **is smelling** the flowers her boyfriend has given to her.  
A. action verb                      B. linking verb
2. My mother **appeared** exhausted after a hard day working on the paddy field.  
A. action verb                      B. linking verb
3. Jane **looks** more beautiful when tying her hair.  
A. action verb                      B. linking verb
4. Maria's grandmother used to **look** after her carefully when she was small.  
A. action verb                      B. linking verb
5. He wants to **become** an inspiring teacher after graduating from his university.

- A. action verb                      B. linking verb
6. The worldwide economic situation **is getting** worse and worse.  
A. action verb                      B. linking verb
7. If you want to **stay** healthy, you should follow the doctor's advice.  
A. action verb                      B. linking verb
8. She is going to **stay** at a friend's house in Ha Long Bay for 3days.  
A. action verb                      B. linking verb
9. When my daughter **grows** older, she will understand what I do for her.  
A. action verb                      B. linking verb
10. My aunt **tasted** this soup carefully.  
A. action verb                      B. linking verb

**VIII. Choose the suitable word to complete each sentence.**

1. What's the matter with you? You look **happy/happily** today.
2. He appears very **excited/excitedly** when looking at her.
3. I taste the soup very **careful/carefully**. Don't worry!
4. John appeared **sudden/suddenly** behind us and said hello to us.
5. He is shouting at his friend. He seems very **angry/angrily**.
6.     A: Why do you smell the milk?  
       B: Because it smells **terrible/terribly**. You should throw it away.
7. This plan grows **quickly/quick** if it absorbs enough water.
8. He kept talking and his friends seemed **annoyedly/annoyed**.
9. The doctor checked my legs **carefully/careful** to see if there were any injuries.
10. She is looking for the colored pens **serious/seriously** because she needs them now.

**X. Choose the best answer to complete the sentences.**

1. Can you help me? I (look) \_\_\_\_ for my pen now.  
A. look                      B. am looking                      C. looked
2. The sky (grow) \_\_\_\_ brighter after the heavy rain.  
A. is growing                      B. grows                      C. grow
3. At present, I (remain) \_\_\_\_ calm.  
A. remain                      B. remained                      C. is remaining
4. To decide the winner of the competition, the examiners (taste) \_\_\_\_ candidates' dishes now.  
A. taste                      B. tasted                      C. are tasting

5. What's the matter with Mary? She (seem) \_\_\_\_ upset.  
 A. seem                      B. seems                      C. is seeming
6. Listen! Her story (sound) \_\_\_\_ interesting.  
 A. sounds                      B. is sounding                      C. sound
7. She (stay) \_\_\_\_ at one of her penpal friends' houses when she visits Vietnam.  
 A. is staying                      B. stays                      C. stayed
8. The room (get) \_\_\_\_ quiet when teachers entered.  
 A. gets                      B. got                      C. is getting
9. The situation (remain) \_\_\_\_ unchanged in the past 20 years.  
 A. remains                      B. remained                      C. has remained
10. John (be) \_\_\_\_ impolite today.  
 A. is                      B. was                      C. is being

**X. Find EIGHT mistakes in the use of linking verbs in this text.**

(1) Maria and I stayed ready for the party on Sunday morning. (2) Suddenly, Maria smelt extremely tired and her face stayed pale. (3) I sounded so scared that I did not know what to do but took her to the nearby clinic. (4) The doctor said that her health condition was remaining worse and worse and asked me what she had eaten the night before. (5) Maria ate the soup I bought at the restaurant but both of us had no idea that in that soup, there was a lot of shrimp powder to which she became allergically. (6) After one-hour treatment, her health condition gets stable. (7) Now I taste relieved as she looks like better.

1. \_\_\_\_\_                      2. \_\_\_\_\_                      3. \_\_\_\_\_                      4. \_\_\_\_\_  
 5. \_\_\_\_\_                      6. \_\_\_\_\_                      7. \_\_\_\_\_                      8. \_\_\_\_\_

**XI. Match parts of the sentences to make correct ones.**

1. It is her sad story	A. that makes me cry.
2. It was Peter	B. that she had a date with Jim.
3. It was in the Italian restaurant	C. who she broke up with.
4. It was speaking skill	D. that attracts me a lot.
5. It is her small dog	E. that she found the most difficult in learning English.
6. It is at 8 o'clock	F. that there is weather news.

**XII. Complete the following sentences using the given phrases.**

- the man                      on the schoolyard                      on weekends*  
*the lovely cat                      on the way to school                      after I left my house*  
*my close friends                      the strong storm                      my mom                      the letter*

1. It was \_\_\_\_\_ that my younger sister wanted to buy.

2. It was \_\_\_\_\_ that I realized that family had played an integral role in my life.
3. It was \_\_\_\_\_ who was arrested by the police two days ago
4. It is \_\_\_\_\_ that I meet my English teacher.
5. It is \_\_\_\_\_ that we play football very happily.
6. It was \_\_\_\_\_ that blew out some roofs of houses in the village.
7. It was \_\_\_\_\_ that I received from my mother last week.
8. It is \_\_\_\_\_ that we often have picnics.
9. It is \_\_\_\_\_ who always stand by me when I get into some trouble.
10. It is \_\_\_\_\_ who takes responsibility for cooking in my family.

**XIII. Choose the underlined part that is incorrect in the following sentences.**

1. That was Jim who went to hospital last month.  
 A. That                      B. was                      C. who                      D. went
2. It was in Paris that I first meet my wife.  
 A. in                              B. Paris                      C. that                      D. meet
3. It is in 2010 that my life turned over a new leaf.  
 A. is                              B. that                      C. turned                      D. leaf
4. It was on New Year's Eve who Mary broke up with her boyfriend.  
 A. was                              B. on                              C. who                              D. broke up with
5. It was her brother who dropped out of his university and setted up his business.  
 A. was                              B. who                              C. dropped                      D. setted up

**XIV. Choose the correct sentence that is written using the underlined part and cleft sentence with "It".**

1. He spent his summer vacation in Da Lat.  
 A. It is in Da Lat that he spent his summer vacation.  
 B. It was in Da Lat that he spent his summer vacation.  
 C. It is in Da Lat that he spends his summer vacation.  
 D. It was in Da Lat where he spends his summer vacation.
2. Candidates all over the world took part in the competition with great enthusiasm.  
 A. It is great enthusiasm that candidates all over the world took part in the competition.  
 B. It was great enthusiasm that candidates all over the world took part in the competition.  
 C. It was with great enthusiasm that candidates all over the world took part in the competition.  
 D. It is with great enthusiasm which candidates all over the world take part the competition.



3. He gains impressive achievements at the age of 20.
- A. It is at the age of 20 that he gains impressive achievements.
  - B. It was at the age of 20 that he gains impressive achievements.
  - C. It is at the age of 20 that he gained impressive achievements.
  - D. It was at the age of 20 that he gained impressive achievements.
4. Mary made a great contribution to her husband's success.
- A. It is Mary who made a great contribution to her husband's success.
  - B. It was Mary who makes a great contribution to her husband's success.
  - C. It was Mary who made a great contribution for her husband's success.
  - D. It was Mary who made a great contribution to her husband's success.
5. Most parents are willing to lend their ear to their children.
- A. They are their children that most parents are willing to lend their ear to.
  - B. It is their children that most parents are willing to lend their ear to.
  - C. They are their children that most parents are willing to lend their ear.
  - D. It is their children that most parents are willing to lend their ear.

### C. READING

#### I. Reading comprehension on Online Dating and decide if the statements are true (T) or false (F).

It has long been seen as a less romantic way of meeting Mr Right. But finding love over the internet is a good way of meeting a marriage partner, research has showed. It found that one in five of those who have used dating sites to find their perfect partner have gone on to marry someone they met over the web.

The study, by consumer group Which?, also revealed that more than half of the 1,504 people questioned had been on a date with someone they met in cyberspace. Sixty-two per cent agreed that it was easier to meet someone on a dating site than in other ways, such as in a pub or club, or through friends. At the same time, the under 35s were more likely to know someone who had been on a date or had a long-term relationship with someone they met through online dating.

Jess Ross, editor of which.co.uk, said: 'Online dating is revolutionising the way people meet each other. Switching the computer on could be the first step to success!

According to industry surveys, more than 22 million people visited dating websites in 2007, and more than two million Britons are signed up to singles sites.

Of the 147 couples who took part in the study, 61 per cent said their relationships had high levels of these three components. The researchers also found that men were more likely to find true love on the internet than women.

Dr Jeff Gavin, who led the team, said: “To date, there has been no systematic study of love in the context of relationships formed via online dating sites. “But with the popularity of online dating, it is **imperative** we understand the factors that influence satisfaction in relationships formed in this way.”

Charlotte Harper, of Match.com, said: 'We were thrilled to find so many of our former members have found love. 'It supports our belief that the internet does in fact encourage old-fashioned **courtship**.

Statements	(T)	(F)
1. Online dating is seen as modern romance.		
2. Research has shown that online dating is not a good way of meeting people.		
3. Most people who took part in the survey said it is easier to meet people online than elsewhere.		
4. Jess Ross thinks online dating is changing the way people meet each other.		
5. Less than 20 million people visited dating websites in 2007.		
6. Women are more likely to find their ideal partner online than men.		
7. Many members of match.com have found love.		

**II. Read the passage and complete the task that follow.**

In our modern life, we can watch television or surf the Internet to find out about what is happening around the world but our neighborhood can be a place we never really know. A survey has been conducted to find out some people's thought of talking with their neighbors. Here came the results:

A.

We had been living here for five years and had never really got to know our neighbors. Then a tremendous hurricane came and crashed our house. Our neighbors came round to offer us food and help. When finally recovering, we still lived in the same neighborhood and never spoke to our neighbors. I don't know why.

B.

My neighbor went to work on the same route with me. I passed over her every morning when walking to work but never said hello. One morning I said "hello", then a "good morning" and a friendly smile were exchanged between us for the next week. But then, she changed her way to work. I feel that some neighbors may prefer being left undisturbed.

C.

I think it's very nice to come up and talk with your neighbors. Take me as an example. I commute to work every day by bus. One day, I saw Harry on the station platform. We exchanged nods and smiles and eventually he came up to me and said hello. He told me that he had been my new neighbor for three weeks but I didn't even know. We started chatting since then and got to know each other better. Then, guess what? We are now engaged and are getting married next year.

**Write the letter A, B or C that indicates the person next to their description/ opinion below.**

1. \_\_\_\_\_ suffered from a natural disaster.
2. \_\_\_\_\_ is in a relationship with one of her neighbors.
3. \_\_\_\_\_ thinks that some people may find talking with neighbors annoying
4. \_\_\_\_\_ once went to work on the same route with her neighbor.
5. \_\_\_\_\_ thinks positively about talking with neighbors.
6. \_\_\_\_\_ walks to work.
7. \_\_\_\_\_ got help from the neighbors.
8. \_\_\_\_\_ uses public transportation to work.

**III. Read the passage and complete the tasks that follow.**

*Huyen Anh is introducing herself and her closest friends.*

Many people consider me sociable because I am keen on taking part in community activities. I find it easy to start a conversation and get on well with different kinds of people, so I have numerous friends. Among them, Tram Anh, Minh and Bich are my closest ones.

Tram Anh is the tallest girl in my group. She looks beautiful with a straight nose, long black hair, fair skin and dimples. She is interested in helping the poor and the disabled. She volunteers to teach English at the local orphanage every Sunday. She also spends a lot of time helping other classmates to improve their English. She is so gentle and generous that her teachers and friends adore her. Besides, she is a diligent student who always gets good marks.

Similar to Tram Anh, Minh is very outgoing and warm-hearted. He enjoys participating in social activities, such as blood donation and environmental protection campaigns. He is quite talkative and humorous, so he is sometimes regarded as a class clown who always makes others laugh by telling jokes and pretending to do silly things. His jokes, however, sometimes annoy his friends. He also receives many compliments from teachers for being so intelligent and hard-working. He is not only our class's star soccer player but also a talented amateur singer.

Unlike Tram Anh and Minh, Bich is quite shy in public. At break time, she enjoys staying in the classroom to finish her homework before going home. Also, she likes the quiet and peaceful atmosphere of the school library. In her free time, she prefers reading books and helping her mother prepare meals.

Although each of us has different personalities, we share a number of common hobbies and have a lot of fun together. I find myself lucky to have them as my intimate friends.

**Task 1. Answer the following questions by choosing the correct options.**

1. How many friends is Huyen Anh talking about?

A. 2

B. 3

C. 4

2. What is Huyen Anh like?

- A. She is a sociable girl.      B. She is quite reserved in public.      C. She is talkative.
3. What does Tram Anh look like?
- A. She is tall and beautiful.  
B. She enjoys helping the poor and the disabled.  
C. She is so gentle and generous.
4. Tram Anh and Minh, \_\_\_\_\_.
- A. sing quite well                      B. are sociable and helpful                      C. are talkative and humorous
5. What does Bich love doing in her free time?
- A. Doing her homework      B. Studying in the library                      C. Reading and helping her mother

**Task 2. Decide whether the following statements are True (T) or False (F).**

6. It is hard for Huyen Anh to start the conversation with someone.
7. Tram Anh teaches orphans English on Saturdays.
8. Minh's jokes can be annoying to his friends sometimes.
9. Minh can play soccer very well.
10. Bich never does her homework during break time.

**IV. Read the passage and do the task that follows/do the tasks that follow.**

Generally, friendship exists for three reasons: virtue; usefulness; or pleasure. When virtue is the reason, friendship exists for the sake of friendship; where both like each other and cherish each other for some creditable values in the other's personality. You know that you would even die to swear your friendship for that person. You also know that the other would make you live than die for him/her regardless of intelligence, handsomeness, utility or the capability of giving pleasure.

A friendship of the second kind is formed for the practical value of it. How useful so and so is to me? What can I benefit from him? Will he use his reputation and influence to fetch me a good job? Thus a person may maintain relationship for practical, professional, and political reasons. However, once we **do away with** the usefulness, the friendship eventually dies.

Friendship of the third kind is formed essentially on account of the pleasure the relationship can give. He is a joker. The moment he enters, you forget all your worries. She is cute, intelligent and charming. The very notion that she is your friend makes you feel proud. The point rests here: How good is he/she in giving me pleasure physically, emotionally, mentally and materially?

Now to the question: Which of the three is good? The second type is good, yet since basing on utility, it falls short of longevity and quality. The third type is good too, but how long one enjoys only pleasure in life? But the first type, virtue-based friendship is fantastic for this reason: it lasts till the end of this universe.

1. From paragraph 1, we can infer that \_\_\_\_\_.
  - A. Real friendship does not count one person's cleverness, appearance, utility and his/her aptitude for creating fun.
  - B. You have to die in order to prove your friendship.
  - C. Personality is not an important factor in choosing a friend.
  - D. There are two main motives for friendship.
2. Which of the following has the closest meaning to “**do away with**” in paragraph 2?
  - A. kill
  - B. escape
  - C. get rid of
  - D. ask for
3. Which of the following is NOT mentioned in the reading passage?
  - A. Friendship basing on the capacity for creating pleasure still possesses some uncertainty
  - B. Friendship requires a lot of patience and efforts from both sides
  - C. Friendship usually does not last long if it is built on materialistic need
  - D. Virtue-based friendship's core is a friend's creditable traits in his or her personality
4. Synonym(s) of utility in paragraph 4 can be found in:
  - A. paragraph 1
  - B. paragraph 2
  - C. paragraph 3
  - D. paragraph 4
5. Which kind of friendship is most unshakable?
  - A. The first
  - B. The second
  - C. The third
  - D. Not mentioned

#### **D. WRITING**

##### **I. Rewrite each sentence with the word in brackets to emphasize the underlined part.**

1. We had a wonderful party in the garden. (that)

---

2. Mary is very depressed about the result of the examination. (who)

---

3. The boys play football in the schoolyard every afternoon. (that)

---

4. The poor girl won first prize in the singing competition. (that)

---

5. My friend gave me a present at my birthday party. (that)

---

6. We really enjoy doing volunteer work. (that)

---

7. Hung is in the romantic relationship with Mai. (who)

---

8. He bought two houses on Nguyen Trai Street at the age of 25. (that)

---

9. Students usually ask the teacher a lot of interesting questions. (who)

---

10. My mom is making some cakes for our dinner. (that)

---

**II. Reorder the words to make complete sentences.**

1. It/ he/ his/ that/ changed/ father's/ a/ after/ was/ death / lot./ himself

---

2. going/ to/ am/ I/ the / Tokyo/ that/ in / It/ is/ holiday./ spend

---

3. USA/ 2008/ got/It/ the / married./ in/ settled/ down/ he/ was/ that/ in/ and

---

4. that/ It/ mom/ was/ their/ gave / on/ wedding / anniversary / dad/ diamond/ ring./ my/ my/ a

---

5. some/ It/ in / boyfriend/ me/ took / beautiful/ photos/ my/ was / who/ for/ Japan.

---

**PART 3: TEST YOURSELF**

**A. PHONETICS**

**I. Choose the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from that of the others in each group.**

- |                               |                      |                    |                  |
|-------------------------------|----------------------|--------------------|------------------|
| 1. A. <u>l</u> ake            | B. <u>pl</u> ane     | C. <u>pl</u> an    | D. <u>st</u> ate |
| 2. A. <u>t</u> iny            | B. <u>t</u> iger     | C. <u>t</u> in     | D. <u>t</u> ime  |
| 3. A. <u>pl</u> an <u>e</u> t | B. <u>a</u> nimal    | C. <u>m</u> an     | D. <u>dec</u> ay |
| 4. A. <u>se</u> ason          | B. <u>s</u> ometimes | C. <u>s</u> ea     | D. <u>st</u> op  |
| 5. A. <u>th</u> ing           | B. <u>th</u> reaten  | C. <u>th</u> ought | D. <u>th</u> an  |

**II. Pick out the words whose main stressed syllable is different from the rest.**

- |                   |                |                  |                |
|-------------------|----------------|------------------|----------------|
| 1. A. obey        | B. disuse      | C. broaden       | D. invest      |
| 2. A. consumption | B. advertise   | C. influence     | D. history     |
| 3. A. development | B. responsible | C. reinforcement | D. spontaneous |
| 4. A. chemical    | B. element     | C. attention     | D. tropical    |

5. A. decay                      B. exist                      C. timber                      D. supply

## **B. VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR**

### **I. Choose the best options to complete the following sentences.**

1. \_\_\_\_ is a decisive factor in giving up smoking.  
A. Determined              B. Determination              C. Time management              D. Reaction
2. It is your \_\_\_\_ that determines how fast you achieve your goal and how well you acquire a skill or knowledge.  
A. tension                      B. reliability                      C. expense                      D. attitude
3. Men are often attracted by \_\_\_\_ girls in heavy make-up.  
A. flash                      B. flashlight                      C. flashy                      D. flashily
4. He \_\_\_\_ as girls change their clothes.  
A. bridges the gap              B. changes his mind              C. betrays                      D. reacts
5. With the outstanding talent and skills, he is one of the most \_\_\_\_ candidates for the presidency.  
A. flashy                      B. mature                      C. potential                      D. trivial

### **II. Fill in the blank with the correct form of the given words.**

1. The he asks the same question again and again is so \_\_\_\_\_ (FRUSTRATE).
2. Parents can put their trust in Ms Lan because she is an \_\_\_\_\_ teacher (EXPERIENCE).
3. The naughty boy denied \_\_\_\_\_ (RESPECT) his Math teacher.
4. Finally, after much effort, he gained a lot of \_\_\_\_\_ (ACHIEVE) in protecting wild animals.
5. Having too many children puts a lot of \_\_\_\_\_ (FINANCE) burdens on poor parents in rural areas.

### **III. Choose the sentence that is closest in meaning to the given sentence(s).**

1. Peter's parents don't allow him to play computer games or chat online.  
A. Peter mustn't play computer games or chat online.  
B. Peter doesn't have to play computer games or chat online.  
C. Peter's parents oughtn't to allow him to play computer games or chat online.
2. It is advisable that you call Mrs. Brown to make an appointment in advance before you get to her office.  
A. You have to call Mrs. Brown to make an appointment in advance before you get to her office.  
B. Mrs Brown advises you to make an appointment in advance before you get to her office.  
C. You should call Mrs. Brown to make an appointment in advance before you get to her office
3. Ben always gets poor marks in Geography, but he is very good at German.

- A. It is Geography that Ben always gets good marks in.
  - B. It's German that Ben is very good at.
  - C. Ben excels at both Geography and German.
4. John considers Julie intelligent while most of us don't.
- A. It is Julie who most of us consider to be intelligent.
  - B. It was John who considered Julie intelligent.
  - C. It's Julie who John considers intelligent.
5. Van was surprised because she lost five kilos in two weeks.
- A. Van surprised as she gained five kilos in two weeks.
  - B. Van is surprised that she can lose weight.
  - C. Van was surprised to lose five kilos in 2 weeks.
6. Jane finds it hard to start a new relationship after the break-up.
- A. It's not easy for Jane to start a new relationship after the break-up.
  - B. It's always hard to start a relationship with Jane.
  - C. It's hard to believe that Jane starts a new relationship soon after the break-up.
7. We can't change the result of the test. It's impossible.
- A. It's possible for us to change the result of the test.
  - B. It's impossible for us to change the result of the test.
  - C. It's likely that we will change the result of the test.
8. Judy and I are amazed that Anna is willing to help us decorate the classroom.
- A. Judy and I are amazed at Anna's willingness to help us decorate the classroom.
  - B. Judy and I are amazed that Anna's unwilling to help us decorate the classroom.
  - C. Judy and I aren't amazed at Anna's unwillingness to help us decorate the classroom.

**IV. Choose the underlined part which is incorrect.**

1. Nancy said you didn't need to buy her anything for her birthday, but I think you ought at least get her some flowers or a little bottle of perfume.
- A. didn't                      B. to buy                      C. ought                      D. or
2. After three hours of discussion, all the members of the committee felt happily about the decision.
- A. After                      B. all                      C. felt                      D. happily
3. She was so happy because her request participated in the international youth's meeting was granted.
- A. was                      B. happy                      C. participated                      D. granted
4. You don't have to do your homework on Saturday morning. That way you have the rest of the weekend free.



A. don't have to      B. on      C. That way      D. free

5. All the interviewees appeared nervously before the start of the interview, but after that they seemed very happy.

A. interviewees      B. nervously      C. seemed      D. happy

6. It is my purse who I have been looking for for two hours, but I haven't found it.

A. is      B. who      C. two hours      D. it

7. Mark isn't good at public speaking so it's difficult of him to make a speech in front of thousands of people.

A. good      B. so      C. of      D. thousands

8. You have to be horrible to your older sister. It makes her very sad.

A. have to      B. be      C. makes      D. sad

### C. READING

#### I. Choose the best answers to the following questions.

In many aspects of life, effective communication skills are extremely important. With good communication skills, people can enjoy better interpersonal relationships with friends and family. The following are some guides that can help you improve your communication skills.

##### **Learn to listen**

Listening is not the same as hearing you should learn to listen not only to the words being spoken but also how they are being spoken and the non-verbal messages sent with them. You shouldn't think about what to say next while listening; instead clear your mind and focus on the message being received. Your friends, colleagues and other acquaintances will appreciate your good listening skills.

##### **Try to understand other people's emotions**

To understand other people's emotions, you should be sympathetic to other people's misfortunes and congratulate them on their achievements. To do this, you need to be aware of what is going on in other people's lives. It's crucial to maintain eye contact and do not be afraid to ask others for their opinions as this will help to make them feel valued.

##### **Encourage**

It's advised that you offer words and actions of encouragement, as well as praise, to others, which make other people feel welcome, valued and appreciated in your communications. If you let others know that they are valued, they are much more likely to give you their best. You should also try to ensure that everyone get involved in an interaction or conversation by using effective body language and open questions.

1. What is the best title for the passage?

A. Benefits of owning effective communication skills

- B. Ways to improve communication skills
  - C. Behaviours of a good listener
2. Why are effective communication skills important in our lives?
    - A. They help us enjoy a calm state of mind.
    - B. They help us catch people's attention.
    - C. They help us build good interpersonal relationships with others.
  3. What should listeners do while someone is speaking?
    - A. Listen attentively to what is being spoken and how it is delivered.
    - B. Think of what should be spoken next.
    - C. Only pay attention to the words being spoken, not the non-verbal messages sent with them.
  4. According to the writer, what is the way to feel other people's emotions?
    - A. We should show sympathy for other people's bad luck.
    - B. We should express congratulations on other people's success.
    - C. Both A and B are correct.
  5. What should we do to involve everyone in an interaction or conversation?
    - A. Discourage them through words and actions.
    - B. Use body language and open questions.
    - C. Let others feel valued and appreciated.

#### **D. WRITING**

##### **I. Complete the following letter using the given words.**

*scholarship*                      *grateful*                      *hearing*                      *date*                      *enquire*

Dear Mr. Bill Weston,

I am writing to (1) \_\_\_\_\_ about your English courses which is advertised in 'English Today'?

I've just received the result of the IELTS exam, with an overall band score of 6.0. That wasn't a satisfying result because I need 7.0 in order to apply for a (2) \_\_\_\_\_ to study abroad. I was wondering how I can improve my English skills quickly when I saw your advertisement. I realized that my speaking and writing skills are not as good as listening and reading ones.

Could you please tell me if you have any advanced courses aiming at speaking or writing skill available? What (3) \_\_\_\_\_ does the course start and how much does it cost? I would be (4) \_\_\_\_\_

if you could send me more information about the course, including teacher's information and course duration.

Thank you very much for your time.

I look forward to (5) \_\_\_\_\_ from you.

Sincerely,

Hoa Nguyen

## II. Reorder the words or phrases to make complete sentences.

1. me/ to/ lend/ a / parents/ ear/ are/ My/ willing/ sympathetic/

---

2. my/ be/ with/ that/ you'll / staying/ I'm/ know/ family/ to/ for/ weeks/ happy

---

3. have/ me/ know/ questions / let/ any/ Please/ if/ you

---

## Unit 3. ECOMING INDEPENDENT

### PART 1: VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR REVIEW

#### A. VOCABULARY

admire	/əd'maɪə(r)/	(v.)	ngưỡng mộ
admiration	/,ædmə'reɪʃn/	(n.)	sự ngưỡng mộ
assign	/ə'saɪn/	(v.)	phân công
assignment	/ə'saɪnmənt/	(n.)	bài tập
decision	/dɪ'sɪʒən/	(n.)	quyết định
decisive	/dɪ'saɪsɪv/	(adj.)	kiên quyết, dứt khoát
decisiveness	/dɪ'saɪsɪvnəs/	(n.)	tính kiên quyết, sự kiên quyết
decisively	/dɪ'saɪsɪvli/	(adv.)	kiên định, dứt khoát
determined	/dɪ'tɜ:mɪnd/	(adj.)	quyết tâm
determination	/dɪ'tɜ:mɪ'neɪʃn/	(n.)	sự quyết tâm
independent	/,ɪndɪ'pendənt/	(adj.)	độc lập
reliability	/rɪ'laɪə'bɪləti/	(n.)	sự đáng tin cậy
reliable	/rɪ'laɪəbl/	(adj.)	đáng tin cậy
reliably	/rɪ'laɪəbli/	(adv.)	chắc chắn, xác thực
rely on	/rɪ'laɪ ɒn/	(phr. v.)	phụ thuộc vào

remind	/rɪ' maɪnd/	(v)	nhắc nhở
self-discipline	/, self 'dɪsəplɪn/	(n.)	tinh thần tự giác
self-esteem	/, self ɪ 'sti:m/	(n.)	tự trọng, tự tôn
self-reliant	/, self rɪ 'laɪənt/	(adj.)	tự lực, độc lập
well-informed	/, wel ɪn 'fɔ:md/	(adj.)	thạo tin, hiểu biết
accurate	/'ækjərət/	(adj.)	chính xác
approach	/ə'prəʊtʃ/	(v)	tiếp cận, tiến lại gần
be at a loss	/bi: æt ə lɒs/	(idiom)	bối rối, lúng túng
communicate	/kə'mju:nikeɪt/	(v)	giao tiếp
contribute	/kən'trɪbjʊ:t/	(v)	đóng góp
cope with	/kəʊp wɪð/	(v. phr)	đương đầu với
enquire	/ɪn'kwɪə(r)/	(v)	hỏi
enroll	/ɪn'rəʊl/	(v.)	kết nạp, ghi danh, tuyển dụng
expense	/ɪk'spens/	(n.)	chi phí
housekeeping	/'haʊski:pɪŋ/	(n.)	công việc quản gia
inaccurate	/ɪn'ækjərət/	(adj.)	không chính xác
interpersonal	/, ɪntə 'pɜ:sənəl/	(adj.)	giữa cá nhân với nhau, liên nhân
motivated	/'məʊtɪveɪtɪd/	(adj.)	có động lực, tích cực
overcome	/, əʊvə 'kʌm/	(v.)	vượt qua
prioritise	/praɪ 'ɒrɪtaɪz/	(v.)	ưu tiên
priority	/praɪ 'ɒrɪti/	(n.)	quyền ưu tiên
protective	/prə 'tektɪv/	(adj.)	bảo vệ, che chở
strive for	/straɪv fɔ:(r)/	(v. phr.)	nỗ lực
suffer from	/'sʌfə frɒm/	(phr. v.)	chịu đựng
time management	/'taɪm 'mænɪdʒmənt/	(n.)	quản lý thời gian

## B. GRAMMAR REVIEW

**Danh từ/tính từ theo sau bởi động từ nguyên thể có “to”**

**Noun/ Adjective + to verb**

### I. Noun + to verb

#### 1. Cấu trúc

Cấu trúc danh từ đi với động từ nguyên thể có “to” có nghĩa là sau danh từ chúng ta dùng “to” và động từ nguyên thể. Cụm động từ nguyên thể có “to” này sẽ làm rõ nghĩa liên quan đến danh từ.

### N. + to V

Ví dụ: She showed no willingness to help. (Cô ấy không tỏ ra có thiện ý giúp đỡ.)

Sau danh từ *willingness* là cụm động từ nguyên thể có “to” *to help* để làm rõ nghĩa cho danh từ này, cụ thể là thiện ý giúp đỡ, không phải thiện ý làm gì khác.

### 2. Các danh từ dùng trong cấu trúc: noun + to verb

Danh từ trừu tượng		
ability “khả năng”	decision quyết định”	permission “sự cho phép”
advice “lời khuyên”	demand “yêu cầu”	plan “kế hoạch”
ambition “hoài bão”	dream “ước mơ”	request “yêu cầu”
anxiety “mối lo âu”	effort “nỗ lực”	way “cách thức”
attempt “sự cố gắng”	failure “thất bại”	willingness “thiện ý”
chance “cơ hội”	offer “lời đề nghị”	wish “mơ ước”

### 3. Ví dụ

His dream to become a doctor comes true. (Ước mơ trở thành bác sĩ của anh ấy đã trở thành hiện thực.)

Sau danh từ *dream* là động từ nguyên thể có “to” *to become* để làm rõ nội dung ước mơ của anh ấy là *to become a doctor* - trở thành bác sĩ.

I'm impressed by her ambition to be a successful woman.

(Tôi bị ấn tượng bởi hoài bão trở thành một người phụ nữ thành đạt của cô ấy.)

Sau danh từ *ambition* là động từ nguyên thể có “to” *to be* để làm rõ nội dung hoài bão của cô ấy là trở thành *a successful woman* - một người phụ nữ thành đạt.

## II. Adjective + to verb

### 1. Cấu trúc số 1

#### N./ Pron. + linking verb + adj. + to V

Cấu trúc này có nghĩa là “ai đó cảm thấy thế nào vì làm gì/ ai đó cảm thấy thế nào khi làm gì”.

Ví dụ: Linda seemed happy to see her old friends. (Linda có vẻ vui khi gặp gỡ những người bạn cũ.)

Trong đó: Linda (danh từ), seemed (động từ nối), happy (tính từ), to see her old friends (cụm động từ nguyên thể có “to”).

**Các tính từ sử dụng trong cấu trúc này:**

Tính từ
---------

afraid “sợ hãi”	glad “vui mừng”	proud “tự hào”
amazed “ngạc nhiên”	happy “hạnh phúc”	sad “buồn bã”
determined “quả quyết”	lucky “may mắn”	sorry “buồn, tiếc”
disappointed “thất vọng”	pleased “hài lòng”	surprised “ngạc nhiên”

Ví dụ: I'm proud to announce this year's winner. (Tôi thấy vinh dự khi công bố người thắng cuộc của năm nay.) Sau tính từ *proud* là động từ nguyên thể có “to” *to announce*.

I'm amazed to hear about the birth of her baby. (Tôi ngạc nhiên khi biết tin cô ấy sinh em bé.)

Sau tính từ *amazed* là động từ nguyên thể có “to” *to hear*.

## 2. Cấu trúc số 2

### It + linking verb + adj. + (for sb) + to V

Cấu trúc này dùng khi đưa ra bình luận, nhận xét tính chất của hành động “*làm gì đó thì như thế nào*” hoặc “*ai đó thấy như thế nào khi làm gì*”.

Ví dụ: It's interesting for us to work with Mary. (Chúng tôi cảm thấy thú vị khi làm việc với Mary.)

Trong đó: It (chủ ngữ giả), 's (động từ nối), interesting (tính từ), for us (chuyển thể từ for sb), to work with Mary (cụm động từ nguyên thể có “to”)

**Các tính từ sử dụng trong cấu trúc này:**

Tính từ		
boring “nhàm chán”	great “tuyệt vời”	interesting “thú vị”
difficult “khó khăn”	hard “khó khăn”	likely “có thể”
easy “dễ dàng”	important “quan trọng”	necessary “cần thiết”
good “tốt đẹp”	impossible “không thể”	nice “tốt đẹp”

Ví dụ: It looked impossible for her to finish on time. (Có vẻ cô ấy không thể hoàn thành đúng giờ.)

Sau tính từ *impossible* là *for her* (chuyển thể từ for sb) và cụm động từ nguyên thể có “to” *to finish on time*.

It's difficult to answer such questions. (Thật khó để trả lời những câu hỏi như vậy.) \

Sau tính từ *difficult* là động từ nguyên thể có “to” *to answer*.

## 3. Cấu trúc số 3

### It + linking verb + adj. + of sb + to V

Cấu trúc này được dùng để đưa ra bình luận, nhận xét về cử chỉ, hành động của ai đó “*ai đó thật thế nào khi làm gì*”.

Ví dụ: It's kind of Nancy to support Laura. (Nancy thật là tốt bụng khi hỗ trợ Laura.)

Câu trên bắt đầu bằng chủ ngữ giả *It*, theo sau là động từ nối *is* (viết rút gọn là “s), tiếp đến là tính từ *kind*, còn *of sb* trong câu này là *of Nancy*, cuối cùng là cụm động từ nguyên thể có “to” *to support Laura*. Câu này có ý nhận xét hành động Nancy hỗ trợ Laura là cử chỉ tốt đẹp.

**Các tính từ sử dụng trong cấu trúc này:**

Tính từ		
kind “tốt bụng”	friendly “thân thiện”	rude “thô lỗ”
unkind “xấu bụng”	unfriendly “không thân thiện”	nice “tốt đẹp”
polite “lịch sự”	generous “rộng lượng”	clever “thông minh”
impolite “bất lịch sự”	mean “ích kỉ”	silly “ngu ngốc”

Ví dụ: It's impolite of him to shout at her. (Anh ta thật mất lịch sự khi hét vào mặt cô ấy.)

Theo sau tính từ *impolite* là *of him* và cụm động từ nguyên thể có “to” *to shout at her*.

It's nice of Jane to help her mother cook a meal. (Jane thật tốt bụng khi giúp mẹ cô ấy nấu ăn.)

Theo sau tính từ *nice* là *of Jane* và động từ nguyên thể có “to” *to help*.

**GHI NHỚ**

Cấu trúc danh từ theo sau bởi động từ nguyên thể có “to”:

**N. + to V**

Cấu trúc tính từ theo sau bởi động từ nguyên thể có “to”:

**N./Pron.+ linking verb + adj. + to V**

**It + linking verb + adj. + (for sb) + to V**

**It + linking verb + adj. + of sb + to V**

**PART 2: EXERCISES**

**A. PHONETICS**

**I. Choose the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from that of the others in each group.**

1. A. few                      B. new                      C. threw                      D. knew
2. A. weight                      B. height                      C. eight                      D. vein
3. A. wanted                      B. helped                      C. wicked                      D. naked
4. A. intermediate                      B. immediate                      C. medium                      D. medicine
5. A. uncertain                      B. unbeatable                      C. unanimous                      D. undone
6. A. shield                      B. cement                      C. executive                      D. spill
7. A. hasty                      B. nasty                      C. tasty                      D. wastage
8. A. prestige                      B. village                      C. advantage                      D. heritage
9. A. scheme                      B. parachute                      C. architect                      D. psychology
10. A. visit                      B. site                      C. invite                      D. decide

**II. Choose the word which is different from the other in the position of primary stress.**

1. A. sovereignty      B. edition              C. advantage              D. enrichment
2. A. commit              B. open                  C. index                  D. preview
3. A. candidate          B. habitat                C. wilderness              D. attendance
4. A. recipe              B. candidate              C. instrument              D. commitment
5. A. conceal              B. contain                C. converse                D. conquer
6. A. integral              B. terrific                C. museum                D. cathedral
7. A. architectural      B. cosmopolitan        C. appreciative            D. archeologist
8. A. compulsory        B. compliment            C. methodical            D. certificate
9. A. endanger            B. catastrophe            C. opponent                D. vulnerable
10. A. economics        B. engineering            C. information            D. geography

**III. Choose the word whose part of speech is different from the others.**

1. A. accurate              B. approach              C. communicate            D. contribute
2. A. enquire              B. enroll                C. expense                D. approach
3. A. foolish              B. entrance              C. motivated                D. overcome
4. A. priority              B. motivated              C. time management      D. expense
5. A. protective          B. prioritize              C. overcome                D. enquire

**B. VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR**

**I. Match words with their definitions.**

1. self-discipline	A. the belief and confidence in your own ability and value
2. self-esteem	B. the ability to make yourself do what you know you should do although you do not want to do
3. self-reliant	C. doing everything on your own without others' help
4. assignment	D. a task or piece of work that somebody is given to do
5. reliability	E. a choice you make after thinking and talking about what is the best thing to do
6. decision	F. the quality of being able to be trusted to do what somebody wants or needs

**II. Fill in each blank with the correct form of the word in the brackets.**

1. Being too \_\_\_\_\_ on his mother makes me have a bad impression on him. (INDEPENDENT)
2. She is \_\_\_\_\_ to become a director of that company. (DETERMINATION)
3. You should think it over before making that \_\_\_\_\_. (DECIDE)
4. My \_\_\_\_\_ for this girl grows daily. (ADMIRE)
5. Before watching TV. I must finish all of these \_\_\_\_\_. (ASSIGN)



6. Family plays an important role in establishing children's \_\_\_\_\_. (ESTEEM )  
7. How can you know that he is a \_\_\_\_\_ man? (RELIABILITY)

**III. Choose the best answer.**

1. In order to have a great essay, you should look for useful information from \_\_\_\_ sources.  
A. well informed      B. reliable      C. determined
2. My cousin is a very \_\_\_\_ person because he has a lot of knowledge about current topics and particular situations.  
A. determined      B. decisive      C. well-informed
3. She is the most \_\_\_\_ woman in the world I have ever known. When she makes a firm decision to do something, she will never give up or let someone prevent her.  
A. determined      B. independent      C. accurate
4. Being \_\_\_\_ is a vital skill for people who want to take more control of their lives and reach their goal on their own.  
A. independent      B. decisive      C. reliable
5. The teacher \_\_\_\_ a different task to each student at the beginning of the term.  
A. assigned      B. admired      C. reminded
6. Many teenagers \_\_\_\_ heavily on their parents, so they cannot live independently.  
A. admire      B. rely      C. decide
7. Your education background is a \_\_\_\_ factor for your future career.  
A. motivated      B. well-informed      C. decisive

**IV. Fill in the gaps with suitable prepositions.**

1. It's time for you to stop relying \_\_\_\_ your parents.  
A. on      B. in      C. at
2. She strives \_\_\_\_ a balance between studies and relationships.  
A. on      B. at      C. for
3. Aptitude and motivation contribute enormously \_\_\_\_ the success of learning a language.  
A. to      B. in      C. for
4. Yoga and meditation help to improve the ability to cope \_\_\_\_ stress and anxiety.  
A. about      B. with      C. for
5. That situation placed me \_\_\_\_ a loss, which I will never forget.  
A. on      B. in      C. at
6. He must have suffered \_\_\_\_ flu for a long time.  
A. from      B. at      C. in

**V. Complete the sentences using the given words/ phrases.**

*enroll*                      *approaching*                      *expense*                      *enquired*  
*am at a loss*                      *priority*                      *overcoming*                      *cope with*

1. To \_\_\_\_\_ these problems, you must be well-prepared.
2. I \_\_\_\_\_ when running across my boyfriend in the street.
3. If you want to be a good leader, \_\_\_\_\_ these challenges is essential.
4. Finding somewhere to live is now my top \_\_\_\_\_.
5. Tom invests a great \_\_\_\_\_ in this project in hope that he can be successful.
6. Jane \_\_\_\_\_ a lot about the reading assignment.
7. We could see the train \_\_\_\_\_ in the distance.
8. Please tell me about the course as soon as possible so that I can \_\_\_\_\_ early.

**VI. Choose the best answer to complete each sentence.**

1. It is necessary \_\_\_\_ for that book.  
A. to look                      B. looking                      C. look
2. It is very simple to \_\_\_\_ this machine.  
A. to use                      B. used                      C. use
3. She was excited \_\_\_\_ a letter from her mother last week.  
A. to receive                      B. receive                      C. receiving
4. We are very surprised to \_\_\_\_ Peter at the party.  
A. seeing                      B. see                      C. seen
5. Your handwriting is \_\_\_\_.  
A. hard to read                      B. hard for reading                      C. hardly to read
6. She has the \_\_\_\_ well with work pressure.  
A. able to cope                      B. ability for coping                      C. ability to cope
7. Susan made a great effort \_\_\_\_ all homework before the deadline but it was in vain.  
A. for accomplishment                      B. to accomplish                      C. accomplish
8. Jack harbors an ambition \_\_\_\_ an inspiring teacher  
A. being                      B. be                      C. to be
9. It is important \_\_\_\_ us to hand in the report on time.  
A. to                      B. for                      C. of
10. It is \_\_\_\_ of him to help the poor.  
A. generous                      B. generously                      C. generosity

**VII. Complete the sentences using the given phrases.**

*offer to help*                      *dangerous to go*                      *decision to drop*  
*difficult to follow*                *hard to believe*                      *desire to get*  
*easy to understand*                *chance to improve*                      *plan to move*                      *necessary to wait*

1. A: Turn right, then left, go ahead and then left again.  
B: It is \_\_\_\_\_ your directions. Can you tell me more details?
2. A: Do you make out what the teacher has just said?  
B: Yes, I do. It is quite \_\_\_\_\_.
3. A: Mary has just received first prize in the competition.  
B: It is \_\_\_\_\_. Mary said that she had done it terribly.
4. A: It is 9 o'clock. Can we start now?  
B: It is \_\_\_\_\_ for the marketing manager. I think that he is on the way here.
5. A: Stop! Susan. It is \_\_\_\_\_ near the tiger cage.  
B: Oh! Thanks a lot. You save my life.
6. We were surprised at his \_\_\_\_\_ with the project.
7. Her \_\_\_\_\_ out of school is a difficult one to make.
8. Studying in England gives you a \_\_\_\_\_ your English skills.
9. It was his \_\_\_\_\_ a good job that motivated him to study Japanese.
10. Sandy's \_\_\_\_\_ to Madrid bothered her parents.

**VIII. Fill in each gap with the correct form of the given words (use n./adj. to V)**

1. I am \_\_\_\_\_ the result of the exam too late. (disappointment, receive)
2. It is important for you \_\_\_\_\_ confidence in yourself. (having)
3. Her \_\_\_\_\_ the secret causes a lot of trouble for her (fail, kept)
4. It was her \_\_\_\_\_ abroad that inspires her to study hard. (motivate, lived)
5. Mary is \_\_\_\_\_ one of the most excellent students in her class. (happiness, became)
6. It's \_\_\_\_\_ a good friend. (luck, have)
7. Her competitor is ill, which increases her \_\_\_\_\_ the champion. (chance, became)
8. It is rude of him \_\_\_\_\_ when his mouth is full of food. (speaker)

**IX. Complete the letter by choosing the appropriate adjectives or nouns.**

*willingness*                      *difficult*                      *nice*                      *glad*  
*way*                      *dream*                      *hard*                      *surprised*

Dear Mary, My parents and I are (1) \_\_\_\_\_ to know that you passed the end-of-term examination. Congratulations! I think that with your excellence, your (2) \_\_\_\_\_ to become a good doctor will come true.

My younger sister was really (3) \_\_\_\_\_ to receive a hair curling machine from you on her birthday and she asked me to say "thank you to you However, she doesn't know the (4) \_\_\_\_\_ to use that machine. It seems (5) \_\_\_\_\_ for her to use it.

I was relieved that your mother had recovered after a serious surgery. It was (6) \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_ to believe that she had to suffer from a severe disease for a long period of time. Please give her my love.

I am excited that you're going to visit my beautiful city. I want to show you my (7) \_\_\_\_\_ to take you to famous places.

We're looking forward to seeing you. It will be (8) \_\_\_\_\_ for me to welcome you to my house.

Write me soon and confirm your arrival date and time.

Love, Sam.

**X. Choose the sentence that is best rewritten from the given one(s).**

1. You should bring an umbrella with you. That is necessary.
  - A. It is necessary to bring an umbrella with you.
  - B. It is necessary of you to bring an umbrella.
2. I was not allowed to stay outside overnight.
  - A. I didn't have to stay outside overnight.
  - B. I had no permission to stay outside overnight.
3. Don't expect that everyone will agree with you. That is unreasonable.
  - A. Everyone is reasonable to agree with you.
  - B. It is unreasonable to expect that everyone will agree with you.
4. She has determination to achieve the goal.
  - A. It was her determination that helped her achieve the goal.
  - B. She is determined to achieve the goal.
5. We can't know exactly what will happen in 20 years. That is impossible.
  - A. It is impossible to know exactly what will happen in 20 years.
  - B. It is impossible of us to know exactly what will happen in 20 years.
6. Watch this video. It is very useful.
  - A. It is very useful to watch this video.

- B. Watch this video is very useful.
7. My sister is able to solve every problem quickly.
- A. My sister has the ability to solve every problem quickly.
- B. It is hard for my sister to solve every problem quickly.
8. Don't touch that button. It is dangerous.
- A. It is dangerous not to touch that button.
- B. It is dangerous to touch that button.
9. We can't find a suitable candidate for this position. That is difficult.
- A. It is difficult for us to find a suitable candidate for this position.
- B. It was difficult for us to find a suitable candidate for this position.
10. I don't know how to use this washing machine.
- A. I don't know the way how to use this machine.
- B. I don't know the way to use this washing machine.

### **C. READING**

#### **I. Read the text and do the tasks below.**

Many young people strive to be independent. That means you are able to take care of yourself, and you don't have to rely on anyone else. However, to live independently, you need a number of life skills in order not to depend on your parents and older brothers or sisters. One of the most important skills is time management which can help you build your confidence and self-esteem. With good time management skills, you can perform your daily tasks, including your responsibilities at school and at home with pleasing results. Moreover, you will not feel stressed when exam dates are approaching. These skills can also help you act more independently and responsibly, get better grades at school and have more time for your family and friends.

Developing time-management skills is not as challenging as you may think. Firstly, make a plan for things you need to do, including appointments and deadlines. Using a diary or apps on mobile devices will remind you of what you need to accomplish and when you need to **accomplish** it. Secondly, prioritize your activities. You need to decide which tasks are the most urgent and important and then, concentrate on these first. This way, you may not be at a loss to deal with too much work at the same time. Thirdly, develop routines because routines, when established, take less time for you to do your tasks.

Time management skills are not hard to develop; once you master them, you will find out that they are great keys to success and you can become independent.

***Task 1. Decide whether the following statements are True, False or Not Given.***

1. Not only young people try to be independent.
2. People will be independent when they are mature.

3. Time-management is the only thing you need to be independent.
4. Teenagers can have more confidence and self-esteem when they are good at managing their time.
5. Good time-management can help teenagers get better grades at school.

**Task 2. Choose the best answers for the following questions.**

1. What is the main idea of the passage?
  - A. Young people need a lot of life skills to be independent.
  - B. Teenagers can have more confidence and self-esteem if they have good time-management skills.
  - C. Mastering time-management skills can bring many benefits and there are three steps to develop them.
2. Which of the following is not mentioned as benefits of good time-management?
  - A. Be more confident and self-esteemed.
  - B. Complete the daily tasks with the best result.
  - C. Get better grades at school and have more time for other activities.
3. How can you prioritize your activities?
  - A. Make schedule for things you need to do.
  - B. Concentrate on the most urgent and important tasks first.
  - C. Try to establish routines.
4. What does the word **accomplish** mean?
  - A. Complete
  - B. Involve
  - C. Duty
5. What is the author's viewpoint on developing time-management skills?
  - A. It's hard but you can master it well.
  - B. It's very challenging to build.
  - C. It's easier to master than people think.

**II. Fill in each blank with a suitable word in the box.**

<i>reasonable</i>	<i>confidence</i>	<i>independent</i>	<i>Encourage</i>	<i>alone</i>
<i>complete</i>	<i>worth</i>	<i>set</i>	<i>giving</i>	<i>reward</i>

Helping your child to become an independent learner One of the most important learning skills you can help your child to develop is to become an (1.) \_\_\_\_\_ learner. Children who are more independent learners tend to have more self-confidence and have a greater sense that they are in control of their learning. Encouraging independent learning can happen from a young age, but it can be hard for parents who are not trained teachers to know when they are (2.) \_\_\_\_\_ too much help and when they are not giving enough. If you regularly help your child with their homework, there are a few simple steps you can take to help your child become more independent learners.

✓ Help your child to answer the first question or two in an activity then allow them to do the next ones by themselves. (3.) \_\_\_\_\_ them to get the answer themselves, but if they are struggling it may help them to point out how you would find the answer.

✓ Negotiate a time limit on how long they think it will take them to finish the rest of the activity to help them stay focused on their work. Perhaps even (4.) \_\_\_\_\_ a timer on your phone and encourage them to 'race' the clock. The time limit should be (5.) \_\_\_\_\_ so that children can complete the activity with neat writing.

✓ If your child is used to your presence when they (6.) \_\_\_\_\_ their homework, gradually move away from them over a period of time. Helping them to start their homework and then moving to sit nearby but not with them while they finished can give them the comfort of you being there but encourage them to complete the work by themselves. Over time you can put more distance between you until they are able to work (7.) \_\_\_\_\_ while you are able to get on with other things you might need to do.

✓ Set aside time after your child has finished their homework to spend some time alone and focused on them. You could play a game together or read a story. It's a good (8.) \_\_\_\_\_ for having finished their work by themselves. Most importantly, be firm. If your child won't try to work independently or is fussing over something that they can do quite easily when you are there, let them know that you have (9.) \_\_\_\_\_ in their ability to do it by themselves but you won't help them unless they really need it. It can be hard to say 'no, but it is (10.) \_\_\_\_\_ seeing them become more confident and self-assured as learners and people.

### **III. Read through the text below, answer the questions below.**

Scottish Independence The majority of people in Scotland are in favour breaking away from the rest of the UK and becoming independent, according to a poll taken just before the 300th anniversary of the Act of Union, which united Scotland and England.

A pair of Acts of Parliament, passed in 1706 and 1707 that came into effect on May 1, 1707, created Great Britain. The parliaments of both countries were dissolved, and replaced by a new Parliament of Great Britain in Westminster, London.

The poll showed support for independence for Scotland is running at 51%. This is the first time since 1998 that support for separation has passed 50%, and the first time since devolution gave power to the country in 1999. Six months before elections for the Scottish Parliament, these poll results come as good news to the Scottish Nationalist Party, who are hoping to make progress against Labour and further the cause of an independent Scotland.

Many people have become disillusioned with devolution, and believe that the Scottish Parliament has failed to deliver what they had hoped it would; only a tenth have no opinion. In fact, only 39% of those polled want to keep things as they are.

1. Scotland and England \_\_\_\_\_.
  - A. have always been united.
  - B. want to break up the union.
  - C. have been united for a long time.
  - D. were united by war.
2. Great Britain \_\_\_\_\_.
  - A. was formed by an Act of Parliament in 1706.
  - B. was formed by two Acts of Parliament in 1707.
  - C. was formed by an Act of Parliament that came into effect on May 1st 1707.
  - D. was formed by Acts of Parliament that came into effect on May 1st 1707.
3. People who want independence for Scotland \_\_\_\_\_.
  - A. are the vast majority.
  - B. are in the minority.
  - C. are the slight majority.
  - D. have decreased in number since devolution.
4. The majority of people wanted independence for the first time \_\_\_\_\_.
  - A. before devolution.
  - B. in 1999.
  - C. after devolution.
  - D. before and after independence.
5. The results of the poll are good news \_\_\_\_\_.
  - A. for Labour.
  - B. for both parties.
  - C. for the Scottish Nationalist Party.
  - D. for devolution.
6. Most people's opinions of devolution \_\_\_\_\_.
  - A. have gone up.
  - B. have gone down.
  - C. are the same.
  - D. make progress against Labour.
7. The number of people who want to keep things as they are \_\_\_\_\_.
  - A. is greater than those that don't know.
  - B. is smaller than those that don't know.
  - C. is increasing
  - D. is the majority.

#### **D. WRITING**

##### **I. Rewrite each sentence using "noun/ adj + to V" and the given word in brackets.**

1. She is excited that she gets first prize in the competition. (excited)

---

2. My mother was very surprised when she heard that I had won a lottery. (surprised)

---

3. I was very happy that I met my long-lost friend again. (happy)



---

4. She is determined that she can find the best solution for this serious problem. (determined)

---

5. That room needs cleaning by Ms. Laura this afternoon. (necessary)

---

6. Linda finds it interesting to study and listen to music at the same time. (interesting)

---

7. Mary is kind because she helps the poor and the disabled. (kind)

---

8. Peter is clever when he chooses to work in Nancy's team. (clever)

---

9. Finally, she decided to take part in the talk show for young people. (decision)

---

10. Mark always tries to finish his homework on time. (attempt)

---

**II. Rewrite the following sentences without changing their meaning, using the given words.**

1. It's a long time since he last called me.

He hasn't

---

2. When did he get the job?

How long ago

---

3. I advise you to book a table in advance.

If I

---

—

4. I don't want to tell them the secret.

I would rather

---

5. If I improved my English speaking skill, I would easily get that job.

Were

---

6. We wanted to get good seats so we arrived early.

In order

---

7. It took her nearly an hour to do the crossword.

She spent

---

8. The policeman made him confess after three days.

He was

---

9. Nga finds Maths easier than Physics.

Physics is not

---

10. I advise you to see a doctor.

You ought

---

**III. Write these sentences in another way beginning as shown.**

1. It's difficult to understand him.

He is difficult to understand.

2. It's easy to use this machine.

This machine is

---

3. It was very difficult to open the window.

The window

---

4. It's impossible to translate some words.

Some words

---

5. It's expensive to maintain a car.

A

---

6. It's not safe to stand on that chair.

That

---

**IV. Complete the second sentences. Use the adjective in brackets and "to..." as in the example.**

1. I couldn't answer the question.

(difficult) It was a difficult question to answer.

2. Everybody makes that mistake.

(easy) It's an

---

3. I like living in this place.

(nice) It's a

---

4. We enjoyed watching the game.

(good) It was a

---

**V. Make a new sentence beginning "It ...". Use one of these adjectives each time.**

*careless*

*inconsiderate*

*kind*

*nice*

1. Sue has offered to help me.

It's kind of Sue to offer to help me.

2. You make the same mistake again and again.

It

---

3. Dan and Jenny invited me to stay with them. They are so nice.

---

4. The neighbours make so much noise at night. They are so inconsiderate.

---

**VI. Use the following words to complete these sentences.**

*sorry/hear*

*glad/hear*

*pleased/get*

*surprised/see*

1. We were pleased to get your letter last week.

2. I got your message. I \_\_\_\_\_ that you're keeping well.

3. We \_\_\_\_\_ Paula at the party. We didn't expect her to come.

4. I \_\_\_\_\_ that your mother isn't well. I hope she gets better soon.

**PART 3: TEST YOURSELF**

**A. PHONETICS**

**I. Choose the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from that of the others in each group.**

1. A. adopt                      B. involve                      C. stroll                      D. follow
2. A. exist                      B. mind                      C. inspire                      D. provide
3. A. refusal                      B. music                      C. student                      D. studying
4. A. lecturer                      B. medium                      C. inventor                      D. president
5. A. teach                      B. cheer                      C. characterize                      D. watch

**II. Pick out the words whose main stressed syllable is different from the rest.**

1. A. actor                      B. commit                      C. fashion                      D. motion
2. A. education                      B. industrial                      C. intelligent                      D. traditional
3. A. industry                      B. refugee                      C. magazine                      D. Japanese
4. A. freedom                      B. contact                      C. furnish                      D. disturb
5. A. independence                      B. impractical                      C. education                      D. entertainment

**B. VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR**

**I. Choose the best options to complete the following sentences.**

1. We could not \_\_\_\_ my kid in that course because the class was full.  
                     A. send                      B. enroll                      C. afford                      D. interact
2. All members in my family share the \_\_\_\_.  
                     A. homework                      B. norm                      C. objection                      D. housekeeping
3. The new chairman's policy \_\_\_\_ much to the development of our city.  
                     A. outweighs                      B. works out                      C. contributes                      D. breaks up
4. Those who have strong \_\_\_\_ skills are able to get on well with most types of people.  
                     A. personal                      B. interpersonal                      C. matchmaking                      D. potential
5. An example of \_\_\_\_ is when a child doesn't need anyone to remind him of what to do.  
                     A. self-discipline                      B. self-esteem                      C. self-employment                      D. self-educated

**II. Complete the following sentences using the given words.**

*confident                      relationship                      independent                      reconciled                      argument*

1. They had a/an \_\_\_\_\_ life, so they can decide everything on their own.
2. Before breaking up, Mai Anh and Nam had a serious \_\_\_\_\_.
3. We cannot be \_\_\_\_\_ because he can't forgive me for my fault.
4. It's very important to teach students to become \_\_\_\_\_ and strong-willed.
5. Getting involved in a romantic \_\_\_\_\_ does not sound right for you now. You are too young.

**III. Choose the options that best fit the blanks.**

1. According to the doctor's advice, April \_\_\_\_ overuse antibiotics and stay up after midnight.  
A. should                      B. must                      C. shouldn't                      D. oughtn't
2. It \_\_\_\_ my carelessness that caused me a lot of problems in my life and my work.  
A. is                      B. was                      C. has been                      D. will be
3. Every student \_\_\_\_ be disrespectful to their teachers in any circumstances.  
A. mustn't                      B. doesn't have to                      C. don't have to                      D. ought to
4. I can get up late, enjoy a cup of tea while listening to my favourite piece of music on Sunday because I \_\_\_\_ work that day.  
A. have to                      B. must                      C. ought not to                      D. don't have to
5. You \_\_\_\_ work in front of a computer screen for too long. It isn't good for your eyesight as well as your back.  
A. shouldn't                      B. should                      C. don't have to                      D. have to
6. These flowers smell \_\_\_\_\_. I'll buy them for my girlfriend's birthday.  
A. please                      B. pleased                      C. pleasant                      D. pleasantly
7. When John \_\_\_\_ older, he'll probably be mature enough to decide his own life.  
A. sounds                      B. looks                      C. smells                      D. gets
8. It is in a luxury restaurant \_\_\_\_ the thirtieth wedding anniversary of Mr. and Mrs. Brown is held.  
A. that                      B. what                      C. when                      D. who

**IV. Complete each sentence with the correct form of the given word(s).**

1. His boss seems (angrily) \_\_\_\_\_ today, so he avoids adding fuel to the fire.
2. It (be) \_\_\_\_\_ Van Anh who I always share my stories with.
3. I was (amaze) \_\_\_\_\_ to hear that their close friendship turned into a romantic relationship.
4. It's impossible for her (take) \_\_\_\_\_ care of her twins and her mother-in-law.
5. Laura's very surprised at her kids' offer (doing) \_\_\_\_\_ the dishes.
6. It is unreasonable (expectation) \_\_\_\_\_ everyone in this world to be kind to you.
7. Instead of forcing children to do things in a very controlling way, parents (ought, explanation) \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_ what they expect them to do and why.
8. Most teens become (depress) \_\_\_\_\_ if their romantic relationship ends.

**C. READING**

**I. Decide whether the following statements are True, False or Not given.**

Graduating from high school is one of the most important milestones in your life. It's when you have to decide whether you should go to university or you should stop going to school and get a job or attend a vocational training course. Each system has its own focus, style of learning and unique strengths to offer, which can make choosing the right option for you a challenge. The most important factors to consider are your strengths and your interests. If you have a specific career in mind like one in medicine or science, going to university is the best choice, because these jobs really need the academic knowledge only a university education can give you. However, if you simply want to enter higher education because you believe that a degree will open doors for you once you enter the job market, you should think it over. You can go straight into a job and take evening classes to gain qualifications. If you start work and take a break to study when you are older, you can save your money for your studies and get practical experience. Now it's time for you to make an important decision.

1. High school graduation marks a turning point in a person's life.

A. True                      B. False                      C. Not given

2. Most people choose to go to university after finishing high school instead of starting to work.

A. True                      B. False                      C. Not given

3. If a person wants to become a physician, going to university is the best choice.

A. True                      B. False                      C. Not given

4. If someone only thinks of obtaining a degree as a privilege in the job market, they can land a job and take evening classes to gain qualifications.

A. True                      B. False                      C. Not given

5. The writer knows some people get a job after graduating from high school and then come back to their studies later in their lives.

A. True                      B. False                      C. Not given

## D. WRITING

### I. Complete the letter by choosing the appropriate word.

*take                      to help                      to visit                      unchanged                      pay homage to*

Dear Barbara, I'm so glad to hear about your plan (1) \_\_\_\_\_ Vietnam this summer vacation and your eagerness to know about some general family rules for teenagers in Vietnam. I've just told my parents about your forthcoming trip, and they said they are very happy to welcome you to our house. About some Vietnamese family rules for teens, I think that there are three most crucial ones that family members, especially teenagers are expected to follow.

First of all, respecting the elderly is the most noticeable family tradition or value. From early ages, children are taught to (2) \_\_\_\_\_ their parents and other older people. Parents themselves

set good examples for their children by looking after their old-aged parents and providing them with both financial and emotional support.

Secondly, it's expected that adolescents help their parents around with the housework and other home duties. Teens can help cook meals, do the washing up, tidy up the house or (3) \_\_\_\_\_ care of younger siblings. Those who live in the countryside are sometimes required to work on the farm with their parents to support the family.

Last but not least, children are supposed to perform well at school. Most Vietnamese people believe that education is the only weapon to combat poverty and change a person's life, so parents want their children to study hard in the hope of a bright future. Then children may have a better chance (4) \_\_\_\_\_ their parents in return.

Life is changing day by day, and family rules are changing as well. However, in my view, the three mentioned rules remain (5) \_\_\_\_\_ in our culture. I hope this information is useful to you. If you have any questions, please let me know.

I look forward to seeing you in Vietnam!

Lots of love, Gia Han

## II. Rewrite each sentence without changing its meaning, using the given word(s) in brackets.

1. Tim doesn't have to agree with everything his parents say. (It, necessary)

---

2. My parents always refuse to allow me to stay out late. (never, let)

---

3. She has a lot of friends because she's willing to help others unconditionally. (because of, willingness)

---

## Unit 4. CARING FOR THOSE IN NEED

### PART 1: VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR REVIEW

#### A. VOCABULARY

barrier	/'bæriə(r)/	(n.)	rào cản, chướng ngại vật
blind	/blaɪnd/	(adj.)	mù, không nhìn thấy được
campaign	/kæm'peɪn/	(n.)	chiến dịch
charity	/'tʃærəti/	(n.)	hội từ thiện, việc từ thiện
cognitive	/'kɒgnətɪv/	(adj.)	liên quan đến nhận thức
deaf	/def/	(adj.)	điếc, không nghe thấy được
disability	/'dɪsə'bɪləti/	(n.)	sự ốm yếu, tàn tật

disabled	/dɪs'eɪbld/	(adj.) (n.) không có khả năng sử dụng chân tay, người tàn tật
disrespectful	/,dɪsrɪ'spektfl/	(adj.) thiếu tôn trọng
donate	/dəʊ'neɪt/	(v.) quyên góp, tặng
dumb	/dʌm/	(adj.) câm, không nói được
effectively	/ɪ'fektɪvli/	(adv.) hiệu quả
impairment	/ɪm'peəmənt/	(n.) sự suy yếu, hư hại, hư hỏng
integrate	/ɪ'ɪntɪgreɪt/	(v.) hòa nhập, hội nhập
launch	/lɔ:nʃ/	(v.) phát động, khởi động
physical	/'fɪzɪkl/	(adj.) (thuộc về) cơ thể, thể chất
principal	/'prɪnsəpl/	(n.) hiệu trưởng
talent	/'tælənt/	(n.) tài năng, người có tài
visual	/'vɪʒuəl/	(adj.) (thuộc về) thị giác, có liên quan đến thị giác
volunteer	/,vɒlən'tiə(r)/	(n.) người tình nguyện, tình nguyện viên
accessible	/ək'sesəbl/	(adj.) có thể tiếp cận được
coordination	/kəʊ,ɔ:di'neɪʃn/	(n.) sự hợp tác
discrimination	/dɪ'skrɪmɪ'neɪʃn/	(n.) sự phân biệt đối xử
fracture	/'fræktʃə(r)/	(n.) (v.) (chỗ/sự) gãy xương
hardship	/'hɑ:dʃɪp/	(n.) sự vất vả
ingredient	/ɪn'grɪ:diənt/	(n.) thành phần, nguyên liệu
involve	/ɪn'vɒlv/	(v.) bao gồm, bao hàm
limitation	/'lɪmɪ'teɪʃn/	(n.) sự giới hạn, hạn chế
millennium	/'mɪ'lɪniəm/	(n.) thiên niên kỷ
mobility	/'mɒʊ'bɪləti/	(n.) tính di động, lưu động
pedestrian	/'pɛdɪstriən/	(n.) người đi bộ
promote	/'prɒməʊt/	(v.) khuyến khích, đẩy mạnh, làm tăng thêm
rewarding	/'rɪ'wɔ:diŋ/	(adj.) bổ ích, đáng làm
support	/'sə'pɔ:t/	(n.) (v.) (sự) ủng hộ, khuyến khích
vocational training	/'vəʊ'keɪʃnəl 'treɪnɪŋ/	(n. phr.) đào tạo nghề
wheelchair	/'wi:lʃeə(r)/	(n.) xe lăn

## B. GRAMMAR REVIEW

**So sánh thì hiện tại hoàn thành và quá khứ đơn (Comparison of present perfect and past simple)**

### I. Dạng thức



➤ **Hiện tại hoàn thành**

+ Khẳng định

**S + have ('ve)/ has ('s) + V<sub>PII</sub> ...**

Eg: I have already taken the English test. (Tôi đã làm bài thi tiếng Anh rồi.)

+ Phủ định

**S+ have not (haven't)/ has not (hasn't) + V<sub>PII</sub> ...**

Eg: He hasn't taken the English test yet. (Anh ấy vẫn chưa làm bài thi tiếng Anh.)

+ Nghi vấn

**Have/ Has + S + V<sub>PII</sub> .....?**

Eg: Have they taken the English test yet? (Họ đã làm bài thi tiếng Anh chưa?)

➤ **Quá khứ đơn**

+ Khẳng định

**S+ V<sub>past tense</sub> ....**

Eg: I went to the movies yesterday. (Hôm qua tôi đi xem phim.)

+ Phủ định

**S+ did not (didn't) + V...**

Eg: He didn't go to the movies yesterday. (Hôm qua anh ấy không đi xem phim.)

+ Nghi vấn

**Did + S + V ...?**

Eg: Did they go to the movies yesterday? (Hôm qua họ có đi xem phim không?)

## II. Các dấu hiệu nhận biết

➤ **Hiện tại hoàn thành**

- already (đã ...rồi): I have already cooked dinner. (Tôi đã nấu bữa tối rồi.)

- yet (chưa): Have you spoken to him yet? (Bạn đã nói chuyện với anh ấy chưa?)

- just (vừa mới): He's just finished his homework. (Anh ấy vừa mới hoàn thành bài tập về nhà của anh ấy.)

- recently (gần đây): He has bought a new car recently. (Gần đây anh ấy mua một chiếc xe hơi mới.)

- ever (đã từng): Have you ever visited Paris? (Bạn đã từng đến thăm Paris chưa?)

- never (chưa bao giờ): I have never seen a lion. (Tôi chưa bao giờ nhìn thấy một con sư tử.)

- since (kể từ): She's been ill since Monday. (Cô ấy bị ốm từ hôm thứ Hai.)

- for (trong khoảng): My daughter has been ill for two days. (Con gái của tôi bị ốm hai ngày rồi.)

➤ **Quá khứ đơn**

- yesterday (hôm qua):

Yesterday I stayed at home. (Tôi ở nhà vào ngày hôm qua.)

- last ... (last week, last month, last year, ...) (... trước):

She got married last year. (Cô ấy kết hôn vào năm ngoái.)

- ... ago (two years ago, centuries ago, ...) (... trước)

I graduated from university three years ago. (Tôi tốt nghiệp đại học ba năm trước đây.)

- in + past time (in 1990, in the 19<sup>th</sup> century, ...) (vào thời điểm )

He was born in 1995. (Anh ấy sinh năm 1995.)

### III. Cách sử dụng

#### 1. Xét về thời điểm diễn ra của sự việc trong quá khứ

- Thì hiện tại hoàn thành diễn tả một hành động xảy ra và kết thúc tại một thời điểm **không xác định** trong quá khứ.

Ví dụ: Don isn't here now. He has left for Singapore. (Hiện giờ Don không có ở đây, Anh ấy đã đến Singapore.)

- Thì quá khứ đơn diễn tả một hành động xảy ra và kết thúc tại một thời điểm **xác định** trong quá khứ.

Ví dụ: Don left for Singapore yesterday. (Don đến Singapore vào ngày hôm qua.)

#### 2. Xét về hành động trong quá khứ có hoặc không có liên quan đến hiện tại

- Thì hiện tại hoàn thành diễn tả hành động đã xảy ra và **còn kết quả ở hiện tại**.

Ví dụ: I've typed 10 letters this morning. (Sáng nay tôi đánh máy 10 bức thư.)

Câu này có thể được nói trong tình huống “Bây giờ vẫn còn là buổi sáng, và tôi có thể vẫn đánh máy được nhiều bức thư hơn nữa”

- Thì quá khứ đơn diễn tả hành động đã xảy ra và **không còn kết quả ở hiện tại**.

Ví dụ: I typed 10 letters this morning. (Sáng nay tôi đã đánh máy 10 bức thư.)

Câu này có thể được nói trong tình huống “Bây giờ không còn là buổi sáng, và tôi không đánh được thêm bức thư nào vào buổi sáng nữa”

#### 3. Các ví dụ khác minh họa sự khác biệt giữa hai thì

Ví dụ 1: A: I have been to the island of Bali. (Tôi đã đến hòn đảo Bali.)

→ Không nhấn mạnh vào thời điểm đến đảo Bali

B: When did you go there? (Bạn đến đó khi nào?)

→ Nhấn mạnh (hỏi) về thời điểm đến đảo Bali Ví dụ 2:

Ví dụ 2: He has lived in Madrid for two years. (Anh ấy đã sống ở Madrid hai năm rồi.)

→ Hành động còn liên quan đến hiện tại vì anh ấy vẫn đang sống ở Madrid.

He lived in Madrid for two years. (Anh ấy đã sống ở Madrid hai năm rồi.)

→ Không còn liên quan đến hiện tại vì anh ấy không còn sống ở Madrid.

## PART 2: EXERCISES

### A. PHONETICS

**I. Choose the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from that of the others in each group.**

1. A. comfort      B. hobby      C. knowledge      D. popopular
2. A. about      B. announce      C. cough      D. shout
3. A. hood      B. hook      C. stood      D. tool
4. A. done      B. gone      C. mum      D. won
5. A. coup      B. group      C. soup      D. tough
6. A. filled      B. landed      C. suited      D. wicked
7. A. cloth      B. clothe      C. with      D. without
8. A. cease      B. chase      C. increase      D. raise
9. A. beds      B. doors      C. students      D. plays
10. A. gypsy      B. huge      C. piggy      D. strange

**II. Pick out the words whose main stressed syllable is different from the rest.**

1. A. silent      B. children      C. village      D. advice
2. A. important      B. performance      C. silently      D. permission
3. A. efficient      B. flowery      C. flourishing      D. gramophone
4. A. inhabitant      B. initiate      C. engineering      D. ingenious
5. A. content      B. advice      C. promise      D. admire

**III. Put the given words into the right group.**

*visual      deaf      donate      launch      campaign*  
*blind      dumb      disabled      talent      cognitive      impairments*

Disabilities	Others

**IV. Choose the suitable word to complete the sentence.**

1. Last week we interviewed some volunteers who had worked with **disabled/disabilities** students.
2. There are more devices to enable people with **impairments/physical disabilities** to travel around.
3. These are students with various visual, **hearing/deaf**, physical and cognitive impairments.

- We need to help disabled students to become independent and **integrate/launch** in the community.
- The students in our class have **charity/donated** more than 50 gifts.

**V. Complete the sentences using the given words.**

*impairments*                      *voluntary*                      *visual*                      *volunteers*                      *support*

- People with physical \_\_\_\_\_ have difficulty climbing stairs.
- This special school helps students with \_\_\_\_\_ impairments to learn Braille.
- Many \_\_\_\_\_ have taken part in our programmes since the campaign was launched.
- We have launched various services to \_\_\_\_\_ people with learning disabilities.
- We completed a \_\_\_\_\_ project for our community center a month ago.

**VI. Fill in each gap with the past simple or the present perfect form of the given word(s).**

- Last night I (lose) \_\_\_\_\_ my keys. I had to call my flatmate to let me in.
- I (lose) \_\_\_\_\_ my keys. Can you help me look for them?
- He (live) \_\_\_\_\_ with his great grandmother for a few years - she died when he was eight.
- She and her best friends (know) \_\_\_\_\_ each other for over fifteen years. They still get together once a week.
- A: What's wrong?  
B: I (break) \_\_\_\_\_ a glass.
- She (be) \_\_\_\_\_ a teacher for ten years, and she still enjoys it.
- How many times (she/ go) \_\_\_\_\_ to the cinema last month?
- Aunt to Jonny: Jonny, I can't believe how much you've changed since the last time I saw you. You (grow) \_\_\_\_\_ at least a foot!
- A: How long (you/ live) \_\_\_\_\_ in Paris?  
B: Twenty years. We came back to live in England in 2010.
- A: How long (you/ live) \_\_\_\_\_ in Japan?  
B: Four years. And we really like it here.

**VII. Complete the second sentence so that it has the same meaning as the first one.**

- The company last won a trophy 20 years ago.

The company hasn't won a trophy

---

- The club has been successful for three years.

The club started to be successful

---

3. The team last won a home game in September.

The team hasn't won a home game

---

4. Peter hasn't scored a goal for 2 months.

Peter last scored a goal

---

5. The club started to play in this stadium in 2010.

The club has played in this stadium

---

6. She became the marketing manager 4 months ago.

She has been the marketing manager

---

7. Lien last visited a centre for children with cognitive impairments two weeks ago.

Lien hasn't visited a centre for children with cognitive impairments

---

8. His sister got injured three weeks ago, and she's still in hospital now.

His sister has been injured

---

### VIII. Choose the suitable word to complete each sentence.

1. Last year I volunteered to teach at a school for people with hearing impairments and **launched/have launched** a campaign to help them.

2. A: How many times **did you try/have you tried** to pass your driving test?

B: Three times so far.

3. A: I can't send my e-mails because my computer's broken.

B: How long **was your computer/has your computer been** broken?

A: About a week. I'm going to take it back to the shop when I have time.

4. A: I went to Japan on holiday last year.

B: How long **were you/have you been** there?

A: Only two weeks. It wasn't really long enough to see everything.

5. A: When **did he arrive/has he arrived**?

B: He arrived at 2 o'clock.

6. A: Why don't you want to play football with us this weekend?  
B: I **broke/have broken** my leg.
7. A: I **never drank/have never drunk** whiskey.  
B: Have some now.
8. My best friend, Linh went to Canana two years ago, but I **wasn't/haven't been** there so far.

**IX. Decide whether the underlined parts in the following sentences are Correct or Incorrect in terms of grammar.**

1. When I turned on the radio yesterday, I heard a song that was popular when I was in high school.  
A. Correct                      B. Incorrect
2. Ben has had a beautiful house near the beach for more than 20 years, but he sold it about five years ago.  
A. Correct                      B. Incorrect
3. The US president has visited our country three times in the last two years.  
A. Correct                      B. Incorrect
4. Look! There is so much food left. Nobody has eaten anything.  
A. Correct                      B. Incorrect
5. We had a nice honeymoon in Budapest a few days ago but the journey to this beautiful city was exhausting as we have spent ten hours sitting on the train.  
A. Correct                      B. Incorrect
6. I watched fireworks on New Year's Eve twice - once last year and once this year. I hope I can watch it next year.  
A. Correct                      B. Incorrect
7. How often did you go on holiday when you were a child?  
A. Correct                      B. Incorrect
8. John joined our team as a novice since last summer. Today he's promoted as the leader.  
A. Correct                      B. Incorrect

**X. Give the correct forms of the verbs in brackets using simple past or present perfect.**

1. The floor looks dirty. I'm sure you (not clean up) \_\_\_\_\_.
2. (you/enjoy) \_\_\_\_\_ the party last night?
3. My bicycle isn't here. I think someone (just take) \_\_\_\_\_ it.
4. They (know) \_\_\_\_\_ each other since they were children.
5. They are the most kind-hearted people he (ever meet) \_\_\_\_\_.
6. He was late yesterday because he (be) \_\_\_\_\_ stuck in the traffic jam.

7. Last year, he (donate) \_\_\_\_\_ 99% of his fortune to charitable organizations.
8. I (be) \_\_\_\_\_ a member of this non-profit organization since 1996.
9. She (make) \_\_\_\_\_ many new friends since she joined this English club.
10. Last month I (feel) \_\_\_\_\_ happy when I cooked a meal for the elderly at a nursing home.

**XI. Put the verbs into the correct tense (simple past or present perfect simple).**

1. Mother: I want to prepare dinner. (you/ wash) \_\_\_\_\_ the dishes yet?
2. Daughter: I (wash) \_\_\_\_\_ the dishes yesterday, but I (have / not) \_\_\_\_\_ the time yet to do it today.
3. Mother: (you/do/yet) \_\_\_\_\_ your homework \_\_\_\_\_?
4. Daughter: No, I (come / just) \_\_\_\_\_ home from school.
5. Mother: You (come) \_\_\_\_\_ home from school two hours ago!
6. Daughter: Well, but my friend Lucy (call) \_\_\_\_\_ when I (arrive) \_\_\_\_\_ and I (finish / just) \_\_\_\_\_ the phone call.
7. Mother: (you/ see / not) \_\_\_\_\_ Lucy at school in the morning?
8. Daughter: Yes, but we (have / not) \_\_\_\_\_ time to talk then.

**XII. Put the verbs into the correct tense (simple past or present perfect simple).**

1. I (cycle /just) \_\_\_\_\_ 50 km.
2. I (cycle) \_\_\_\_\_ 100 km last week.
3. I (write) \_\_\_\_\_ an essay yesterday.
4. I (write / already) \_\_\_\_\_ two essays this term.
5. I (ring/just) \_\_\_\_\_ my friend.
6. I (ring) \_\_\_\_\_ my friend 10 minutes ago.
7. Two days ago, I (watch) \_\_\_\_\_ a Madonna concert on TV.
8. I (see / already) \_\_\_\_\_ Madonna live in concert.
9. I (spend) \_\_\_\_\_ my summer holiday in Australia last year.
10. I (be/not) \_\_\_\_\_ to Australia yet.

**XIII. Put the verbs into the correct tense in the following dialogue (simple past or present perfect simple).**

1. A: (you / be / ever) \_\_\_\_\_ to London?
2. B: Yes, I (be) \_\_\_\_\_ there three times.

3. A: When (be) \_\_\_\_\_ the last time you (be) \_\_\_\_\_ there?

4. B: Last summer. I (spend) \_\_\_\_\_ two weeks in Brighton with my parents and we (go) \_\_\_\_\_ to London one weekend.

5. (you/ like) \_\_\_\_\_ it?

6. Oh yes. We really (have) \_\_\_\_\_ a great time in London.

7. Lucky you! I (be / never) \_\_\_\_\_ to London.

**XIV. Put the verbs into the correct tense (simple past or present perfect simple).**

1. A: (you / try / ever) \_\_\_\_\_ haggis?

2. B: Oh, yes!

3. A: How often (you / eat) \_\_\_\_\_ haggis yet?

4. B: Two times exactly.

5. A: When (you / eat / first) \_\_\_\_\_ haggis?

6. B: That (be) \_\_\_\_\_ in 2005. We (have) \_\_\_\_\_ a Scottish festival in our town and they also (sell) \_\_\_\_\_ traditional Scottish food. So I (buy) \_\_\_\_\_ haggis.

7. A: (you / like) \_\_\_\_\_ it?

8. B: It (be / not) \_\_\_\_\_ too bad. And I (know / not) \_\_\_\_\_ anything about haggis then.

9. A: When (you / find out) \_\_\_\_\_?

10. B: When I (be) \_\_\_\_\_ in Scotland in 2007. I (go)

\_\_\_\_\_ to a restaurant and (order) \_\_\_\_\_ haggis. Afterwards, the waiter (tell) \_\_\_\_\_ me about haggis: it's the heart, liver and lungs of a sheep, boiled in the animal's stomach. Well, I (eat / never) \_\_\_\_\_ haggis again since then.

**XV. Put the verbs into the correct tense (simple past or present perfect simple).**

1. A: (you / play / ever) \_\_\_\_\_ the new computer game?

2. B: No, not yet. I only (buy) \_\_\_\_\_ it yesterday and I (have / not) \_\_\_\_\_ the time yet.

3. A: (you / go) \_\_\_\_\_ to the cinema last night?

4. B: Yes. I (be) \_\_\_\_\_ there with Sue and Louis. (you / be)

\_\_\_\_\_ to the cinema recently?



5. A: I last (go) \_\_\_\_\_ to the cinema two weeks ago.
6. B: So you (see / not) \_\_\_\_\_ the new action film yet.
7. A: No, unfortunately not. (you / enjoy) \_\_\_\_\_ it?
8. B: Oh, I really (love) \_\_\_\_\_ it. But Sue (like / not) \_\_\_\_\_  
it - too much action!
9. A: But why (you / take) \_\_\_\_\_ her with you? She (tell)  
\_\_\_\_\_ me last week that she (hate) \_\_\_\_\_ action films.

**XVI. Put the verbs into the correct tense (simple past or present perfect simple).**

1. I (just / finish) \_\_\_\_\_ my homework.
2. Mary (already / write) \_\_\_\_\_ five letters.
3. Tom (move) \_\_\_\_\_ to this town in 1994.
4. My friend (be) \_\_\_\_\_ in Canada two years ago.
5. I (not / be) \_\_\_\_\_ to Canada so far.
6. I (already / travel) \_\_\_\_\_ to London a couple of times.
7. Last week, Mary and Paul (go) \_\_\_\_\_ to the cinema.
8. I can't take any pictures because I (not / buy) \_\_\_\_\_ a new film yet.
9. (they / spend) \_\_\_\_\_ their holiday in New Zealand last summer?
10. (you / ever / see) \_\_\_\_\_ a whale?

**C. READING**

**I. Read the passage and answer the following questions.**

Each summer, the Winant and Clayton Volunteer program sends a group of Americans to volunteer in London for seven weeks and provides housing and a small stipend to help defray the high cost of living. After seven weeks of volunteering, participants have two weeks to travel independently before returning to London to evaluate the program and get their flight back to the United States.

The application includes a few short essays, a series of questions about the type of placement one would prefer, and an informal interview with former volunteers that gives applicants a chance to find out more about the program.

Deciding to participate takes a small leap of faith. The roster of volunteer placements and housing options can change from year to year and volunteers can't choose their placement in advance. But once you're accepted you instantly feel that you've joined a close-knit group. The volunteer coordinator is in frequent contact through mailings and e-mails to help you prepare for the trip, and there is a daylong orientation in New York that bring all the volunteers together before departure for London.

1. How long do a group of Americans volunteer in London?

- A. two weeks            B. each summer            C. seven weeks            D. three weeks
2. What does the Winant and Clayton Volunteer program provide them with?
- A. housing and a small stipend            B. a few short essays  
C. transportation            D. foods and clothes
3. Which of the following is NOT included in the application?
- A. A series of questions about the type of placement one would prefer  
B. An informal interview with former volunteers  
C. A few short essays  
D. The roster of volunteer placements
4. What can the volunteers do after seven weeks of volunteering?
- A. They can have two weeks to travel independently  
B. They can have two weeks to evaluate the program  
C. They can return to London  
D. They can get their flight back to the United States
5. How does the volunteer coordinator keep in contact with you?
- A. Through television and newspapers            B. Through telephone and e-mails  
C. Through mailings and e-mails            D. Through radio and cell phone

**II. Read the following passage and choose the best option.**

The United States has been criticized for its treatment of its elderly citizens. Although in many other countries the elderly usually live with their children's family, many older Americans live alone, without the close companionship of their children. This situation is sometimes blamed on the "selfishness" of the young generation, but a closer look shows that many of the elderly prefer to maintain their independent lives.

Research on the situation of the elderly in America has shown that while grandparents are delighted to be visited periodically by their children and grandchildren, they prefer to continue living in the surroundings that they are familiar with. This suggests that children should permit their parents to live alone if they wish to, and should encourage them to maintain close ties to the rest of the family.

Another surprising result of the research on the elderly in the United States has been the very positive influence which pets have been found to have on the elderly people that they live with. It has been shown that elderly people who care for small pets, such as cats and dogs, live longer, are healthier, and have better attitudes towards their lives than similar elderly people without these companions.

1. Many elderly Americans live \_\_\_\_.
- A. without satisfaction.            B. by themselves.

C. a lonely life.

D. a simple life.

2. What do some people see as the cause of this situation?

A. The society of the USA treats its elderly people as troubles.

B. The young people usually trouble the elderly of their own.

C. The government concerns hardly about the elderly people.

D. The young people are too selfish.

3. Many of the elderly Americans want to \_\_\_\_.

A. keep living in their well-known places and conditions.

B. remain with the grandchildren in their houses.

C. remove to their sons' or daughters' homes.

D. live with their friends in their hometown.

4. The author advises the young people to \_\_\_\_.

A. keep close ties with the elderly of their own.

B. let the elderly of their families live by themselves.

C. permit their elderly relatives to raise some pets.

D. respect the wishes of their elderly parents.

5. The author's main thought is that \_\_\_\_.

A. the elderly who care for some pets live together.

B. the social practice in the USA makes the elderly live alone.

C. the elderly people should have better attitudes towards their lives.

D. it is a social tradition that the elderly Americans enjoy the self-directing lives.

### III. Fill in each blank with a suitable word in the box.

*treatment*

*social*

*retirement*

*elderly*

*aspects*

*physical*

*aging*

*needs*

*pensioners*

*on*

There are many (1) \_\_\_\_\_ that are involved in taking care of (2) \_\_\_\_\_ or aged people. Those who have the responsibility of taking care of the aged need to be aware of the various needs and requirements that the elderly have.

Elderly individuals who live (3) \_\_\_\_\_ their own, without the support of anyone, may have a certain amount of financial needs. Such people need to fend for themselves for everything, including food, groceries, medicines etc. (4) \_\_\_\_\_ have the benefit of a steady source of monthly income. Those who do not have any pension or other source of income would have to live entirely on their saving or through special senior citizens' government financial schemes or donations from charitable organisations.

It is natural that elderly people prefer staying at home in their old age. This brings the benefit of familiar surroundings and people around them. The homes of such people may be modified to accommodate their changing needs. There is the added benefit of familiar neighbours in the event of an emergency. Transportation is quick and easier for elderly people residing in areas that are familiar to them.

Health services are the most important requirement when it comes to elderly (5)

---

Elderly people have age-related health issues. This is a normal part of life and cannot be avoided. Proper care and nursing facilities go a long way in keeping most of these health issues in check and also preventing them from causing any serious harm. Regular medical check-ups are useful to monitor the health of the elderly and also to anticipate potential future issues. Regular medical check ups also help in identifying serious health problems at the initial stage when (6) \_\_\_\_\_ has a greater chance of success.

As people age, their digestive systems gradually starts to weaken. Elderly people often find that they have difficulty digesting certain foods. It is important to realize that diet has to change to accommodate the reduced ability of the body. It may be okay to over-indulge with regards to food when young. But for the elderly, a nutritious and balanced diet made up of foodstuffs that the digestive system is able to accept is of utmost importance. Very often, the diet needs to be altered taking into consideration the medicines that are consumed each day.

For the elderly whose mobility has been affected due to (7) \_\_\_\_\_, a certain amount of assistance in the daily routines becomes a necessity. It may not be possible for a family member to be present the whole day. Home nurses are the latest professionals to have appeared on the career list. For those elderly who need assistance in basic activities like walking, eating, bathing and dressing a home nurse is an invaluable companion.

The elderly have (8) \_\_\_\_\_ needs too. Being debilitated by age is no reason for the elderly to be confined to themselves or in their rooms. Modern medicine recognises as fact that the elderly, just as ordinary people, need to feel wanted, cared for and loved. The world over, kind-hearted people take turns to give companionship to the elderly. Oftentimes, just physical proximity is enough comfort for the elderly. Some read to them and some others chat with them.

(9) \_\_\_\_\_ comfort for the elderly differs from the needs of the young. As an example, air-conditioning may be looked upon as a necessity for the young. Yet, for an aged body, it may be very uncomfortable.

Considering all that has been said, is it any wonder that care homes have become a billion dollar industry? Not every business is about profits. Care homes serve an important purpose in modern society. Nursing homes, care homes, (10) \_\_\_\_\_ villages and retirement communities are just

some of the forms that organised elderly care has taken. In the United States alone, this industry was worth USD 17 billion in 2010.

#### **IV. Read the text and decide the following statements are True or False.**

As you are reading this text, someone in your country has been affected by the AIDS crisis. People in every part of the world have been affected by the AIDS pandemic. Every nation in the world has had to take steps to address it. According to a recent United Nations estimate, 38.5 million people across the globe are infected with HIV-AIDS.

Because AIDS has had such far-reaching effects, in the year 2000, for the first time in the history of the United Nations, the Security Council took up a health issue - HIV-AIDS. The world body declared the spread of the virus a global emergency, a threat to peace and security in Africa, the continent that has been the hardest hit by the disease. The AIDS virus was considered no less destructive than warfare itself. In the year 2000, armed conflict took the lives of 2,000 people in Africa, while the AIDS virus claimed the lives of 2 million.

World-wide, the effect of the spreading AIDS virus has created 16.6 million orphans, 90 per cent of whom are in sub-Saharan Africa, a region where the crisis has been particularly deadly. Because so many have died, the very infrastructure of the region is endangered. So many people who play key roles in society - doctors, teachers, farmers - are dying of AIDS.

What is the United Nations doing to address the AIDS crisis? UN-AIDS and its agencies have brought some innovative ways of spreading the message that, first, people need to overcome the stigma of AIDS so they can come forward to learn about prevention, diagnosis and treatment. One way to transmit this message is by providing education and AIDS awareness training to local community members whose work brings them into regular contact with other members. One such local community member is Paul Lopez, a hairdresser in Mexico City. Paul's clients tend to confide in him, their regular hairdresser. Therefore, he was trained by a UN-AIDS programme to dispense advice about testing and treatment of HIV-AIDS. Now, along with advice about beauty, Paul tells clients how they can protect themselves from the AIDS virus or where they can go for treatment should they need it.

Another crisis that United Nations programmes address is the crisis of care produced by the overwhelming number of AIDS orphans, 95 per cent of whom are in sub-Saharan Africa, where the spread of AIDS has been particularly lethal. Normally, when a child's parents die of AIDS, other family members, such as uncles and aunts, will take responsibility for the orphaned child. But because there are such increasing numbers of AIDS orphans and because the economic resources of some communities are so limited, it is increasingly difficult to find adults who can take in extra children. Often, children live by themselves in their deceased parents' home, surviving as well as they can.

A typical case is fourteen year-old Justin of Malawi, who has to care for his 10-year-old brother and nine-year-old sister. Justin says it is very hard to find enough to eat although he does his best to support

himself and his siblings through his job carrying food for merchants. Since Justin and his siblings have no one to take them in, they continue to live by themselves in their deceased parents' home. United Nations and its agencies such as UNICEF sends aid workers and mobilizes community-based volunteer groups to go to the homes of orphaned children with daily supplies of food, money and advice on how to spend it. The aid workers also know the necessity of encouraging the children to go to school. Children's chances of completing their education are cut in half once they become orphans.

In the Ugandan village of Kalong, for example, a tragic scene that is all too common in rural villages took place: six-year-old Nakeyeyune cried as the elders decided who would take custody of her six-month-old brother and other young siblings after both his parents had died from AIDS-related causes. In Uganda, one quarter of all families are caring for AIDS orphans. The poverty of many rural families makes it difficult for them to take responsibility for more children.

One way the United Nations helps single and foster parents to raise income levels is by fostering micro-credit cooperatives in rural villages. Micro-credit programmes allow traditional craft-makers and farmers to form cooperatives and sell more of what they produce. The increased incomes enable single and adoptive fosterparents to raise their income levels so they can support orphaned children. Such programmes have been especially successful among single mothers.

1. Only a few parts of the world have been affected by the AIDS crisis.
2. In this writing, over 40 million people in the world are affected with HIV-AIDS.
3. The Security Council had often dealt with medical issues.
4. The Secretary-General said the AIDS crisis could not compare with the devastating effects of war.
5. There are a total of 13 million orphans in the world.
6. UN aid workers take jobs as hairdressers and farmers in local communities to help fight the spread of AIDS.
7. Orphans never live alone in any country.
8. Sometimes AIDS orphans have to work to support younger brothers and sisters.
9. UNICEF aid workers bring food, money, and advice to the orphans.
10. In Uganda (at this writing) 25 per cent of families take care of AIDS orphans.
11. Families who take care of orphans have enough resources to do so easily.
12. The United Nations has sponsored micro-credit cooperatives to help guardians support orphaned children.

#### **D. WRITING**

**I. Write a sentence with the given words so that it has similar meaning to the given sentence. Use the past simple or the present perfect.**

1. This is the first time Mary has had a tablet.

Mary/ have/ never/ a tablet/ before

---

2. We haven't seen Mark since last week.  
The last time/ we/ see/ Mark/ be/ last week
- 

3. Nick joined a golf club a year ago.  
Nick/ be/ a member of a golf club/ a year
- 

4. Mr. Diamond lives in Singapore. He moved there in 2010.  
Mr. Diamond/ live/ in Singapore/ 2010
- 

5. I have attended an English course for three weeks.  
I/ start/ an English course/ three weeks
- 

6. Phuong is still working on her homework.  
Phuong/ not/ finish/ her homework/ yet
- 

7. We haven't played tennis for a month.  
We/ last/ play/ tennis/ a month
- 

8. Mr. Phil is a swimmer. He started swimming when he was five years old.  
Mr. Phil/ be/ a swimmer/ he/ be/ five
- 

**II. Write recommendations to improve accessibility for disabled people, using the words and phrases given. Change the word forms, if necessary.**

1. consider / ways / make / day-to-day life / easier /.

---

2. help / people with disabilities / engage / hobbies / activities /.

---

3. change / the way / think / act towards / people in need /.

---

4. improve / home safety / provide / friendly environment / disabled people/.

---

5. remove / barriers / stop / disabled / contribute / the community/.

---

6. provide / people / hearing impairments / with / suitable / hearing aids /.

---

**III. Make sentences from the words in brackets. Use the present perfect or past simple.**

1. it/ not/ rain/ this week) → It hasn't rained this week.

2. (the weather/ be/ cold/ recently)

The weather

---

3. (it/ cold/ last week)

It

---

4. (I/ not/ read/ a newspaper yesterday)

I

---

5. (I/ not/ read/ a newspaper today)

I

---

6. (Emily/ earn/a lot of money/ this year)

---

7. (she/ not/ earn/ so much/ last year)

---

8. (you/ have/ a holiday recently?)

---

**PART 3: TEST YOURSELF**

**A. PHONETICS**

**I. Choose the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from that of the others in each group.**

- |                          |                       |                     |                      |
|--------------------------|-----------------------|---------------------|----------------------|
| 1. A. chore <u>s</u>     | B. brothe <u>r</u> s  | C. boy <u>s</u>     | D. studen <u>t</u> s |
| 2. A. crocod <u>i</u> le | B. signat <u>u</u> re | C. d <u>i</u> ne    | D. d <u>i</u> nosaur |
| 3. A. <u>a</u> pple      | B. <u>b</u> asic      | C. tra <u>n</u> sit | D. tra <u>m</u> p    |



4. A. chimney      B. chemical      C. chilly      D. china  
 5. A. chick      B. service      C. textile      D. fabric

**II. Pick out the words whose main stressed syllable is different from the rest.**

1. A. oceanic      B. advantageous      C. compulsory      D. influential  
 2. A. inflation      B. maximum      C. applicant      D. character  
 3. A. compulsory      B. biography      C. curriculum      D. admirable  
 4. A. struggle      B. anxious      C. confide      D. comfort  
 5. A. teacher      B. lesson      C. action      D. police

**B. VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR**

**I. Complete the sentences using the given words.**

*integrate      campaign      donate      cognitive      blind*

1. He found it very difficult to \_\_\_\_\_ himself into a society whose culture is too different from his own.  
 2. We've received a lot of expressions of support for our \_\_\_\_\_.  
 3. When you \_\_\_\_\_ money, you should help the poor not the rich.  
 4. \_\_\_\_\_ impairment can cause problems with a person's thinking, communication, understanding or memory.  
 5. Physical movement is one of the biggest challenges for \_\_\_\_\_ people.

**II. Complete the following sentences using the given words.**

1. When you encounter someone who is being rude or \_\_\_\_\_, it's hard to know how to react. (RESPECTFUL)  
 2. Thanks to your \_\_\_\_\_ today we are able to help disabled children in the neighbourhood. (DONATE)  
 3. Getting treatment for \_\_\_\_\_ loss can greatly improve quality of life for individuals affected. (HEAR)  
 4. Visual \_\_\_\_\_ cause issues with eyesight that can interfere with students' academic success. (IMPAIR)  
 5. This organization's main aim is to help disabled people to overcome their \_\_\_\_\_. (DISABLE)

**III. Choose the options that best fit the blanks.**

1. The boy from Brazil \_\_\_\_ to be the best dancer in the group.  
 A. appears      B. to appear      C. is appearing  
 2. He doesn't earn much money, so he \_\_\_\_ a car yet.

- A. isn't having      B. didn't have      C. hasn't had
3. Bob can't stand not \_\_\_\_ Mary each day because she is an indispensable part of his life.  
A. see      B. to see      C. seeing
4. These boys are so talented. They have been able to play musical instruments since they \_\_\_\_ five.  
A. are      B. were      C. have been
5. Yesterday, John \_\_\_\_ home, \_\_\_\_ his suitcase and \_\_\_\_ to bed early.  
A. was arriving - unpacking - going    B. arrived - unpacked - went    C. has arrived - unpacked - gone
6. It's no use \_\_\_\_ to persuade him when he is in a bad mood.  
A. tried      B. trying      C. to try
7. How many times \_\_\_\_ to ring her back this morning? - Three times so far.  
A. do you try      B. did you try      C. have you tried
8. Bean \_\_\_\_ Laura an apology because he left her to marry another girl without giving a clear explanation.  
A. owns      B. owes      C. owing

**IV. Decide whether the underlined part in each of the following is Correct or Incorrect.**

1. Betty deserves be the team leader because she really puts her mind to her work and gets on well with her colleagues.  
A. Correct      B. Incorrect
2. We lived in Bangkok for ten months but we've been in London for the last three years.  
A. Correct      B. Incorrect
3. Mom: Hello.  
Son: Hi Mum, it's me. I want to say I've just arrived at Boston safely and everything is fine.  
A. Correct      B. Incorrect
4. Lead a happy life isn't as easy as a pie because it depends on many factors.  
A. Correct      B. Incorrect
5. Shall we go to the cinema? I haven't been there since last month.  
A. Correct      B. Incorrect
6. Visiting Gardens by the Bay and Botanic Gardens are a must if you are on a Singapore city tour.  
A. Correct      B. Incorrect
7. We are having a mini-discussion on a member state of ASEAN during our tomorrow's English lesson.  
A. Correct      B. Incorrect
8. Although the chicken soup Linda cooked isn't tasting good, I still feel thankful for her care.

A. Correct

B. Incorrect

### C. READING

#### I. Decide whether the following statements are True, False or Not given.

Children with disabilities often have difficulties fulfilling tasks at school or in their daily life. However, nowadays their life seems to be easier with the help of technology. Assistive technology brings them devices that help them to perform activities.

Audio players and recorders may help these children to be able to listen to the words as they read them on the page. Many e-books have audio files, and smartphones and tablet computers come with text-to-speech software that can read aloud anything on children's screen. If they struggle with writing or taking notes, an audio recorder can capture what the teacher says in class so the child can listen to it again at home.

Talking calculators and large-display calculators might be useful for people with visual impairments. A talking calculator has built-in speech output to read the numbers, symbols and operation keys aloud. It can help people confirm that they have pressed the correct keys.

If children have trouble with writing, try using plastic pencil grips or a computer. Basic word processing programs come with features that can help with spelling and grammar issues. Speech recognition software allows children to speak and have the text appear on the screen.

1. The life of disabled children is less hard with technology.

A. True

B. False

C. Not given

2. Text-to-speech software can help students with cognitive impairment to learn more easily.

A. True

B. False

C. Not given

3. Children can use an audio recorder to help them catch what the teacher says in class.

A. True

B. False

C. Not given

4. People with hearing impairments might need help of talking calculators.

A. True

B. False

C. Not given

5. Speech recognition software help disabled students by reading aloud what appear on the screen.

A. True

B. False

C. Not given

### D. WRITING

#### I. Complete the sentences by choosing the appropriate word(s).

*has*

*salty*

*visiting*

*visitors*

*beautiful white*

1. When you go to Thailand, the first thing you should do is

---

the ancient temples.

2. The combination of sweet, sour, hot and \_\_\_\_\_ flavours makes Thai cuisine so distinct.
3. With over 13,000 islands, Indonesia has something unique to offer to all sorts of \_\_\_\_\_.
4. From the \_\_\_\_\_ sands of Bali, to the vibrant capital city of Jakarta, to the untouched lands of Sumatra, you can always find something different in Indonesia.
5. Situated in the midst of the Asia Pacific region, Malaysia \_\_\_\_\_ a strategic location and a year-round tropical climate.

**II. Reorder the words or phrases to make complete sentences.**

1. square/ of/ land/ has/ a/ kilometers/ Cambodia/ area/ 181,035

---

2. the/ is/ kip/ unit/ currency/ in/ The/ Laos/ Lao

---

3. spoken/ is/ Standard/ The/ official/ language/ in/ Brunei/ Malay

---

**Unit 5. BEING A PART OF ASEAN**

**PART 1: VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR REVIEW**

**A. VOCABULARY**

association	/əˌsəʊʃi'eɪʃn/	(n.)	hội, hiệp hội
benefit	/'benɪfɪt/	(n.)	lợi ích
bloc	/blɒk/	(n.)	khối
charter	/'tʃɑ:tə(r)/	(n.)	hiến chương
cooperation	/kəʊˌpə'reɪʃn/	(n.)	sự hợp tác
dominate	/'dɒmɪneɪt/	(v.)	trội hơn, chiếm ưu thế
economy	/'iːkənəmi/	(n.)	nền kinh tế
fundamental	/ˌfʌndə'mentl/	(adj.)	cơ bản, chủ yếu
interference	/ˌɪntə'fɪərəns/	(n.)	sự can thiệp
maintain	/meɪn'teɪn/	(v.)	duy trì
principle	/'prɪnsəpl/	(n.)	nguyên tắc
quiz	/kwɪz/	(v.)	kiểm tra, đố
regional	/'ri:dʒənl/	(adj.)	(thuộc) khu vực, vùng
scholarship	/'skɒləʃɪp/	(n.)	học bổng

solidarity	/ˌsɒlɪ'dærəti/	(n.)	sự đoàn kết
stability	/stə'biləti/	(n.)	sự ổn định
brochure	/'brəʊʃə(r)/	(n.)	sách mỏng (thông tin, quảng cáo về cái gì)
conference	/'kɒnfərəns/	(n.)	hội nghị
constitution	/ˌkɒnstɪ'tjuːʃn/	(n.)	hiến pháp
dispute	/di'spju:t/	(n.)	cuộc tranh luận, cuộc tranh chấp
elongated	/'i:lŋgertɪd/	(adj.)	thon dài
external	/ɪk'stɜːnl/	(adj.)	ở ngoài, bên ngoài
graceful	/'ɡreɪsfl/	(adj.)	duyên dáng, yêu kiều
identity	/aɪ'dentəti/	(n.)	tính đồng nhất
in accordance with	/ɪn ə'kɔːdnz wɪð/	(idiom)	phù hợp với
internal	/ɪn'tɜːnl/	(adj.)	ở trong, bên trong
motto	/'mɒtəʊ/	(n.)	khẩu hiệu, phương châm
official	/ə'fɪʃl/	(adj.)	chính thức
outer	/'aʊtə(r)/	(adj.)	bên ngoài
progress	/'prəʊɡres/	(n.)	sự tiến bộ, sự tiến triển
rank	/ræŋk/	(n.)	thứ hạng
sponsor	/'spɒnsə(n)/	(n.)	nhà tài trợ
vision	/'vɪʒn/	(n.)	tầm nhìn

## B. GRAMMAR REVIEW

### ♣. Danh động từ (Gerunds)

#### I. Định nghĩa và vai trò của danh động từ

##### 1. Định nghĩa

Danh động từ là một danh từ được hình thành bằng cách thêm đuôi -ing vào sau động từ.

**Gerund = Noun (V-ing)**

*Phân biệt danh động từ và hiện tại phân từ:*

Danh động từ	Hiện tại phân từ
Learning English is fun.	She's learning English.

<p>(Học tiếng Anh thì rất vui.)</p> <p><i>Learning</i> là danh từ đóng vai trò chủ ngữ trong câu và mang nghĩa là “việc học”. Vì vậy, <i>learning</i> trong câu này là một danh động từ.</p>	<p>(Cô ấy đang học tiếng Anh.)</p> <p><i>Learning</i> trong ví dụ này có hình thức là một động từ thêm đuôi <i>-ing</i> được chia ở hiện tại tiếp diễn. Nó giữ vai trò là động từ ở dạng hiện tại phân từ và mang nghĩa là “đang học”.</p>
--	--

## 2. Vai trò

### ➤ Danh động từ làm chủ ngữ.

Studying is not always easy. (Việc học không phải lúc nào cũng dễ dàng.)

Trong câu này, *studying* là một danh động từ được thành lập từ động từ *study* thêm đuôi *-ing* và đóng vai trò làm chủ ngữ trong câu.

### ➤ Danh động từ làm bổ ngữ.

Her hobby is writing novels. (Sở thích của cô ấy là viết tiểu thuyết.)

*Writing* trong câu này là danh động từ đóng vai trò làm bổ ngữ, đứng sau động từ *to be is* và bổ nghĩa cho chủ ngữ *her hobby*.

### ➤ Danh động từ làm tân ngữ.

+) Danh động từ làm tân ngữ sau một số động từ:

She loves jogging. (Cô ấy thích chạy bộ.)

*Jogging* đóng vai trò làm tân ngữ đi sau động từ *loves* và bổ nghĩa cho động từ này.

+) Danh động từ làm tân ngữ sau một số động từ đi kèm với giới từ:

I am thinking about going to the movies. (Tôi đang nghĩ về việc đi xem phim.)

*Going* là một danh động từ đóng vai trò làm tân ngữ đi sau giới từ *about* và bổ nghĩa cho cụm động từ *thinking about*.

+) Danh động từ làm tân ngữ sau một số cụm từ:

She can't help laughing when watching the show. (Cô bé không nhịn được cười khi xem chương trình đó.)

*Laughing* là danh động từ đóng vai trò làm tân ngữ đi sau cụm từ *can't help* và bổ nghĩa cho cụm từ này.

## II. Một số động từ hoặc cụm từ theo sau bởi danh động từ

### 1. Một số động từ theo sau bởi danh động từ

#### V + V-ing

Ví dụ: Technology encourages multitasking. (Công nghệ khuyến khích việc làm nhiều việc cùng một lúc.)

Theo sau động từ *encourages* là danh động từ *multitasking* được thành lập bằng cách thêm *-ing* vào sau

động từ *multitask*.

**Một số động từ theo sau bởi danh động từ:**

Động từ		
admit <i>thừa nhận</i>	enjoy <i>thích</i>	permit <i>cho phép</i>
allow <i>cho phép</i>	finish <i>hoàn thành</i>	postpone <i>trì hoãn</i>
avoid <i>tránh</i>	forgive <i>tha thứ</i>	practise <i>thực hành</i>
delay <i>trì hoãn</i>	imagine <i>tưởng tượng</i>	recommend <i>gợi ý</i>
dislike <i>không thích</i>	involve <i>liên quan đến bao gồm</i>	risk <i>(có nguy cơ mạo hiểm)</i>
encourage <i>khuyến khích</i>	mind <i>thấy ngại/ thấy phiền</i>	suggest <i>gợi ý</i>

Ví dụ: Would you mind explaining this again? (Phiền bạn giải thích lại giúp mình phần này được không?)

Sau động từ *mind* là danh động từ *explaining*.

My mother suggests visiting Da Nang. (Mẹ mình gợi ý nên đi thăm quan Đà Nẵng.)

Sau động từ *suggests* là danh động từ *visiting*.

**2. Một số cụm từ theo sau bởi danh động từ**

✓ **Cấu trúc số 1:**

**V + prep. + V-ing**

Ví dụ: They focus on finishing the project. (Họ tập trung hoàn thành dự án.)

Trong câu này, động từ *focus* đi kèm với *on* và theo sau bởi danh động từ *finishing*.

**Một số động từ đi kèm giới từ và theo sau bởi danh động từ:**

Cụm từ	
agree with <i>đồng ý làm gì</i>	focus on <i>tập trung vào</i>
apologise for <i>xin lỗi vì làm gì</i>	insist on <i>khăng khăng về</i>
carry on <i>tiếp tục làm gì</i>	put off <i>trì hoãn</i>
concentrate on <i>tập trung vào</i>	rely on <i>tin tưởng vào</i>
depend on <i>phụ thuộc vào</i>	succeed in <i>thành công trong</i>
dream of <i>mơ về</i>	worry about <i>lo lắng về</i>

Ví dụ: She always worries about being late for school. (Cô ấy luôn lo lắng bị muộn học.)

Theo sau cụm động từ *worries about* là danh động từ *being* được tạo thành bằng cách thêm *-ing* vào sau

động từ *be*.

She apologises for treating her aunt unkindly. (Cô ấy xin lỗi vì đối xử không tốt với dì của cô ấy.)

Theo sau cụm động từ *apologises for* là danh động từ *treating*.

✓ **Cấu trúc số 2:**

**Phrase + V-ing**

**Một số cụm từ khác cũng theo sau bởi danh động từ:**

Cụm từ
Can't help <i>không thể nhịn được không thể tránh được</i>
Can't stand/ Can't bear <i>không thể chịu đựng được điều gì</i>
It's no use/ It's no good/ There's no point in <i>không đáng để làm gì/ thật vô ích khi làm gì</i>
To be worth <i>đáng để làm gì</i>

Ví dụ: It's worth challenging yourself. (Đáng để thử thách bản thân.)

Theo sau cụm từ *It's worth* là danh động từ *challenging* được tạo thành bằng cách thêm đuôi *-ing* vào

sau động từ *challenge*.

There's no point in persuading her now. (Thật vô ích khi thuyết phục cô ấy bây giờ.)

Theo sau cụm từ *There's no point in* là danh động từ *persuading*.

I can't bear being alone. (Tôi không thể chịu đựng nỗi sự cô đơn.)

Theo sau cụm từ *can't bear* là danh động từ *being*.

♣. **Động từ chỉ trạng thái (Stative verbs)**

**I. Định nghĩa**

Động từ chỉ trạng thái *Stative verbs* hay còn gọi là *State verbs*.

Là những động từ **không mô tả hành động** mà giúp **mô tả một trạng thái** hay **tình huống** mang tính **ổn định**, ít thay đổi và đúng trong một thời gian nhất định.

Ví dụ: - She is a pretty girl. (Cô ấy là một cô gái xinh xắn.)

Trong câu này, *is* là động từ chỉ trạng thái chia ở hiện tại đơn theo chủ ngữ *she*. *Is* không mô tả hành

động của chủ thể *she* mà nó liên kết chủ thể này với cụm từ *a pretty girl* để nói lên đặc trưng của chủ thể

này là một cô gái xinh đẹp”. Đặc trưng này mang tính ổn định lâu dài.

- They seem to be good friends. (Họ có vẻ là những người bạn tốt. ).

*Seem* là động từ chỉ trạng thái mang nghĩa “dường như/ có vẻ” Động từ này được chia theo hiện tại đơn,

sau chủ ngữ số nhiều *they* nên được giữ nguyên.

- To win or to lose. It depends on you! (Thắng hay thua là phụ thuộc vào bạn!)



*Depends* mang nghĩa “phụ thuộc” và đóng vai trò là động từ chỉ trạng thái. Động từ này chia theo chủ

ngữ số ít *It* nên sau *depend* chúng ta thêm *s*.

- That book belongs to her. (Cuốn sách đó thuộc về cô ấy hoặc Cuốn sách đó là của cô ấy.)

*Belongs* là động từ chỉ trạng thái mang nghĩa “thuộc về”. Vì chia theo chủ ngữ số ít *That book* nên chúng ta thêm *s* vào sau *belong*.

## II. Các động từ chỉ trạng thái phổ biến

### Nhóm 1: Các động từ chỉ sự tri nhận thông qua các giác quan

hear (nghe thấy)	see (nhìn thấy)	taste (có vị)
smell (có mùi)	sound (nghe có vẻ)	

### Nhóm 2: Các động từ chỉ quan điểm, nhận thức

agree (đồng ý)	know (quen biết/ hiểu)	doubt (ngghi ngờ)
believe (tin rằng)	understand (hiểu)	regret (hối tiếc)
think (tin rằng/ cho rằng)	realise (nhận ra)	guess (phỏng đoán)
remember (nhớ)		

### Nhóm 3: Các động từ giúp bày tỏ tâm trạng, cảm xúc

desire (ao ước)	hate (ghét)	hope (hy vọng)
like (thích)	want (muốn)	love (yêu)
wish (ước)	prefer (thích)	feel (cảm thấy)
seem (có vẻ dường như)		

### Nhóm 4: Các động từ chỉ sự sở hữu

belong (thuộc về)	consist (bao gồm)	include (bao gồm)
have (có)	own (sở hữu)	

### Nhóm 5: Các động từ khác

be (là)	concern (bận tâm)	depend (phụ thuộc)
deserve (xứng đáng)	matter (có ý nghĩa có tính chất quan trọng)	

Ví dụ: - Your idea sounds great! (Ý kiến của bạn nghe có vẻ tuyệt đấy!)

*Sounds* ở đây là động từ chỉ trạng thái mang nghĩa “nghe có vẻ”. Vì chia theo chủ ngữ số ít *your idea* nên chúng ta thêm *s* vào sau động từ này.

- He doubts what Im saying. (Cậu ấy nghi ngờ những gì tôi đang nói.)

*Doubts* là động từ chỉ trạng thái mang nghĩa “nghi ngờ”.

- Linda owns an expensive car. (Linda sở hữu một chiếc xe hơi đắt tiền.)

*Owns* là động từ chỉ trạng thái mang nghĩa “sở hữu”.

- She deserves a rest after a hard day at school.

(Cô bé xứng đáng được nghỉ ngơi sau một ngày học vất vả ở trường.)

*Deserves* là động từ chỉ trạng thái mang nghĩa “xứng đáng”.

### III. Các động từ vừa chỉ trạng thái vừa chỉ hoạt động

Ví dụ: That tea smells good. Tách trà đó có mùi thơm.

và Shes smelling that tea. Cô ấy đang ngửi tách trà đó.

Ở ví dụ thứ nhất, *smells* là động từ chỉ trạng thái mang nghĩa “có mùi” và giúp mô tả tính chất của trà là “có mùi thơm” chứ không phải hành động “ngửi”.

Ở ví dụ thứ 2, *smell* là động từ chỉ hành động “ngửi”. Vì vậy, nó được chia ở dạng thức tiếp diễn như các động từ chỉ hoạt động khác.

Như vậy, *smell* có thể vừa là động từ chỉ trạng thái vừa là động từ chỉ hoạt động. Tuy nhiên, sắc thái nghĩa của chúng là hoàn toàn khác nhau và khi là động từ chỉ hoạt động thì nó có thể được dùng ở dạng thức tiếp diễn.

#### Một số động từ có thể vừa là động từ chỉ trạng thái vừa là động từ chỉ hoạt động:

Động từ	Chỉ hoạt động	Chỉ trạng thái
<i>Taste</i>	The soup tastes good. Món canh đó có vị ngon.	I am tasting the soup. Tôi đang nếm món canh đó.
<i>Look</i>	They look happy together. Họ trông thật hạnh phúc bên nhau.	Why are you looking at me? Tại sao cậu lại nhìn tớ thế?
<i>Weigh</i>	The apples weigh a kilo. Những quả táo này nặng 1 cân.	She is weighing the apples. Cô ấy đang cân những quả táo.
<i>Be</i>	Rose is a clever girl. Rose là một cô gái thông minh.	Rose is being silly today. Hôm nay Rose cư xử thật ngốc nghếch.
<i>See</i>	I see your point. Tớ hiểu ý cậu.	I am seeing Peter in an hour. Tớ sẽ gặp Peter trong một giờ nữa.
<i>Have</i>	Linda has a big house.	Linda is having dinner.

	Linda có một ngôi nhà lớn.	Linda đang ăn tối.
<b>Think</b>	I think you're right. Tớ nghĩ rằng cậu đã đúng.	What are you thinking about? Bạn đang suy nghĩ về điều gì vậy?
<b>Consider</b>	I consider you my friend. Tớ xem cậu là bạn.	I am considering your advice. Tớ đang suy nghĩ kĩ về lời khuyên của cậu.

## PART 2: EXERCISES

### A. PHONETICS

**I. Choose the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from that of the others in each group.**

1. A. turn                      B. burn                      C. curtain                      D. bury
2. A. massage                      B. carriage                      C. voyage                      D. dosage
3. A. chemist                      B. champagne                      C. chaos                      D. chiropracist
4. A. chair                      B. cheap                      C. chorus                      D. child
5. A. though                      B. comb                      C. only                      D. gone
6. A. afterwards                      B. advise                      C. agree                      D. allow
7. A. bear                      B. beard                      C. pear                      D. tear (v)
8. A. find                      B. bite                      C. since                      D. drive
9. A. breath                      B. breathe                      C. thank                      D. threat
10. A. took                      B. book                      C. shoe                      D. would

**II. Pick out the words whose main stressed syllable is different from the rest.**

1. A. event                      B. prefer                      C. accent                      D. refer
2. A. pagoda                      B. animal                      C. elephant                      D. architect
3. A. suggest                      B. report                      C. career                      D. profit
4. A. equipment                      B. cultural                      C. primary                      D. organize
5. A. cancer                      B. rubbish                      C. species                      D. begin

**III. Read the following sentences and choose the correct intonation.**

1. How many members does ASEAN have?
  - A. Rising intonation
  - B. Falling intonation
2. Do you know its aims and purposes?
  - A. Rising intonation
  - B. Falling intonation
3. How do ASEAN members help each other?

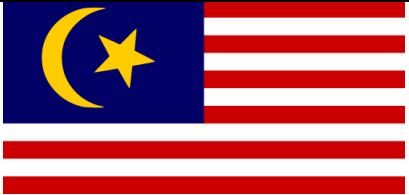

- A. Rising intonation                      B. Falling intonation
4. Do you remember its main principles?  
 A. Rising intonation                      B. Falling intonation
5. Mai applied for the Singapore Scholarship.  
 A. Rising intonation                      B. Falling intonation
6. Is the culture of Vietnam one of the oldest in the region?  
 A. Rising intonation                      B. Falling intonation
7. Dragons and turtles are important symbols in Vietnamese culture.  
 A. Rising intonation                      B. Falling intonation
8. There are 54 ethnic groups living in Vietnam.  
 A. Rising intonation                      B. Falling intonation
9. How often is the ASEAN Para Games held?  
 A. Rising intonation                      B. Falling intonation
10. Is English the official language in Singapore?  
 A. Rising intonation                      B. Falling intonation

**B. VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR**

**I. Match each country with its capital city.**

1. Brunei Darussalam	A. Kuala Lumpur
2. Cambodia	B. Vientiane
3. Indonesia	C. Phnom Penh
4. Laos	D. Bandar Seri Begawan
5. Malaysia	E. Jakarta

**II. Match each country with its flag.**

1. Myanmar	 <p>A.</p>
2. Philippines	 <p>B.</p>

3. Singapore	 C.
4. Thailand	 D.
5. Malaysia	 E.

**III. Match the word with its definition.**

1. Association	A. an advantage that something gives you; a helpful and useful effect that something has
2. Benefit	B. an official group of people who have joined together for a particular purpose
3. Charter	C. a written statement of the principles and aims of an organization
4. Dominate	D. serious and very important; affecting the most central and important parts of something
5. Fundamental	E. to control or have a lot of influence over somebody/ something
6. Interference	F. the act of getting involved in and trying to influence a situation that does not concern you

**IV. Put the stative verbs into the right column.**

<i>own</i>	<i>consist</i>	<i>hope</i>	<i>taste</i>	<i>feel</i>	<i>sound</i>	<i>have</i>
<i>hate</i>	<i>think</i>	<i>agree</i>	<i>love</i>	<i>see</i>	<i>include</i>	<i>know</i>
<i>hear</i>	<i>belong</i>	<i>wish</i>	<i>guess</i>	<i>smell</i>	<i>believe</i>	

Senses	Opinions	Emotions	Possession

**V. Complete the sentences using the given words.**

*cooperation*      *economy*      *maintain*      *principle*      *bend*  
*bloc*

1. After his fall he complained that he couldn't \_\_\_\_\_ his back properly.
2. As I know the European Union is a powerful trading \_\_\_\_\_.
3. The agreement would give new solidity to military \_\_\_\_\_ between the two countries.
4. ASEAN would rank as the eighth largest \_\_\_\_\_ in the world if it were a single country.
5. They find it difficult to \_\_\_\_\_ such high interest rates.
6. The general \_\_\_\_\_ is that education should be available to all children up to the age of 16.

**VI. Match the two halves of a sentence to have a correct one.**

1. My parents never stop quizzing me	A. for closer cooperation among the member states.
2. I've read that ASEAN focuses on improving member states' economies	B. about where I go at night.
3. As the constitution of ASEAN, the charter sets out the rules	C. and maintaining regional peace and stability.
4. ASEAN started a programme of economic	D. and will have a chance to study at universities in Singapore.
5. I hope that Vietnamese athletes will dominate	E. cooperation in the late 1970s.
6. Several talented students have been awarded the Singapore Scholarship	F. the next ASEAN Schools Games.

**VII. Match the word and its definition.**

1. Brochure	A. the system of laws and basic principles that a state, a country or an organization is governed by
2. Conference	B. a small magazine or book containing pictures and information about something or advertising something
3. Constitution	C. a large official meeting, usually lasting for a few days, at which people with the same work or interests come together to discuss their views
4. Identity	D. a short sentence or phrase that expresses the aims and beliefs of a person, a group, an institution, etc. and is used as a rule of behaviour
5. Motto	E. the characteristics, feelings or beliefs that distinguish people from others

6. Progress	F. the process of improving or developing, or of getting nearer to achieving or completing something
-------------	--

**VIII. Complete the sentences using the given words.**



*graceful      official      elongated      dispute      in accordance with      external*







- Both domestic and \_\_\_\_\_ factors are believed to have played a role in this improved performance.
- She looks so \_\_\_\_\_ and fashionable in this picture.
- Children usually have to act \_\_\_\_\_ their parents' wishes.
- Germany's Angela Merkel will hold an \_\_\_\_\_ meeting of European prime ministers on 27 August.
- The employees have been in \_\_\_\_\_ with the managers for two weeks.
- Shaped like an \_\_\_\_\_ "S", Vietnam stretches the length of the Indochinese Peninsula and extends across two climatic zones.

**IX. Match two halves of a sentence to have a correct one.**

1. The motto of Vietnam is	A. Malaysia is famous worldwide for its natural beauty.
2. The ASEAN countries wish to promote	B. "Independence - Freedom – Happiness".
3. Ranked the 10th most-visited country in the world,	C. economic growth, social progress and cultural development.
4. ASEAN stands for the Association of Southeast Asian Nations	D. their brochure about ASEAN member states.
5. Do you know when Vietnam became	E. and it was formed on August 8 <sup>th</sup> 1967.
6. He is seeing his classmates in an hour to discuss	F. an official member of ASEAN?

**X. Match the sentences with the corresponding pictures.**

1. She always dreams of becoming a famous model.	A. 
2. I can't avoid catching a cold in winter.	B. 

3. He loves reading more than anything else.	 <p>C.</p>
4. Taking photos is one of her leisure activities.	 <p>D.</p>
5. My daughter practises painting every day.	 <p>E.</p>
6. She imagines flying in the sky.	 <p>F.</p>
7. Tom has just finished cooking his own breakfast.	 <p>G.</p>
8. He regrets making me sad.	 <p>H.</p>

**XI. Complete the sentences using the given words.**

*doing*      *reviewing*      *laughing*      *lending*  
*setting*      *visiting*      *eating*      *packing*

- I can't help \_\_\_\_\_ when I watch videos of Mr. Bean.
- Linda dreams of \_\_\_\_\_ up her own business.
- He is interested in \_\_\_\_\_ noodles cooked by his grandma.
- Nam suggests \_\_\_\_\_ a quiz on ASEAN countries.
- He insisted on \_\_\_\_\_ his luggage on his own.



6. Do you mind \_\_\_\_\_ me some money?
7. They carry on \_\_\_\_\_ the lessons carefully before the end-of-term exam.
8. It's worth \_\_\_\_\_ this museum.

**XII. Choose the suitable word to complete each sentence.**

1. **Visiting/Visitting** centers for orphans or disabled people is something that I usually do at the weekends.
2. The main aim of this cultural exchange program is **promoting/promoteing** a lasting friendship between the two nations.
3. Buying a new home often **cause/causes** people great anxiety.
4. Most of the time, **swiming/swimming** at the beach is safe.
5. Paul really **enjoyed/forgived** being the editor of the yearbook at his high school.
6. Jim's job involves **take/taking** complaints from dissatisfied customers.
7. Peter was rather a lazy student, and he tended to avoid **playing/studying** whenever he could.
8. Laura keeps apologising for **not being/being** able to hand in her reports on time.

**XIII. Fill in each gap with the correct form of one of the given words.**

<i>wait</i>	<i>smile</i>	<i>waste</i>	<i>finish</i>
<i>be</i>	<i>win</i>	<i>break</i>	<i>prohibit</i>

1. \_\_\_\_\_ laughs from audiences is a priceless gift to actors and actresses.
2. She concentrates on \_\_\_\_\_ the easy parts of the exam paper first.
3. Reading English books and watching American television shows \_\_\_\_\_ good ways to improve your English vocabulary.
4. There's no point in \_\_\_\_\_ too much money creating a flashy look.
5. I can't bear \_\_\_\_\_ in a long queue to buy discounted items.
6. They succeed in \_\_\_\_\_ the world records in weightlifting.
7. Marie always enjoys \_\_\_\_\_ at the camera and making her friends happy.
8. \_\_\_\_\_ the use of cell phones during the lessons is a new rule proposed by the principal.

**XIV. Complete the sentences using the given words.**

<i>owns</i>	<i>hope</i>	<i>realize</i>	<i>thinks</i>
<i>smells</i>	<i>want</i>	<i>weigh</i>	<i>see</i>

1. Jim's cousin \_\_\_\_\_ several luxurious restaurants and five-star hotels.
2. I don't \_\_\_\_\_ how much my best friend has changed recently.
3. The final exam is coming. I \_\_\_\_\_ you pass it with flying colours.
4. I \_\_\_\_\_ what you mean. You don't need to explain more.

5. A: I'm so hungry.

B: Do you \_\_\_\_\_ a sandwich?

6. Mary insists on loving Peter because she \_\_\_\_\_ he is a good guy.

7. Don't eat that cake. It \_\_\_\_\_ awful.

8. Mark, you \_\_\_\_\_ 80 kilos. You should eat less chocolate.

**XV. Choose the best option to complete each of the following sentences.**

1. I \_\_\_\_ a multilingual dictionary. Use it if you need to look up a new word in any languages.

- A. have                      B. is having                      C. owe

2. The students at the back of the room \_\_\_\_ you. Can you speak louder?

- A. hear                      B. can't hear                      C. are not hearing

3. Is Alan over there? He \_\_\_\_ old and tired. Is he sick?

- A. looks                      B. looked                      C. is looking

4. She \_\_\_\_ the soup in the kitchen when the telephone rang.

- A. tasted                      B. is tasting                      C. was tasting

5. She \_\_\_\_ him for quite a long time. They are good friends.

- A. knows                      B. has known                      C. has been knowing

6. I \_\_\_\_ a little boy in the room. He is sleeping on the sofa.

- A. see                      B. is seeing                      C. saw

7. I bet that your bag \_\_\_\_ a ton. There are too many books in it.

- A. weighs                      B. weight                      C. weighed

8. A: Hello. Please put me through to the manager.

B: Could you call a little later? He \_\_\_\_ a meeting now.

- A. has                      B. is having                      C. has had

**XVI. Decide whether the underlined parts in the following sentences are Correct or Incorrect.**

1. Peter, I believe you can do better if you join our team. Please spend more time thinking about our offer.

- A. Correct                      B. Incorrect

2. The chef always tastes every dish before he serves it to make sure that it tastes delicious.

- A. Correct                      B. Incorrect

3. We intend to have a picnic this weekend, but it is depending on what the weather's like at the weekend.

- A. Correct                      B. Incorrect

4. This ancient clock has been belonging to that museum since 2000, and now it's still on display there.

- A. Correct                      B. Incorrect

5. I am seeing my teacher this Friday, so I can't go out with you that day.

A. Correct

B. Incorrect

6. I was being hopeful at the beginning of the season, but now I don't think that Liverpool will be the champion.

A. Correct

B. Incorrect

7. I don't want to have a fight about that matter. Just forget it! It isn't mattering.

A. Correct

B. Incorrect

8. Tim deserves a raise because he is such a dedicated employee who is willing to work overtime to finish projects.

A. Correct

B. Incorrect

**XVII. Fill in each gap with the correct form of the given word(s).**

1. The thief looked into his rear-view mirror and (realise) \_\_\_\_\_ that he was being followed by a police car.

2. Mark (taste) \_\_\_\_\_ the wine when suddenly the fire alarm went off. He spilled wine all over his shirt.

3. Although Tom is ill, he (know) \_\_\_\_\_ what's happening around him.

4. Why don't you braid your hair? You (look) \_\_\_\_\_ better if you do so.

5. I'm telling you the truth. Why (you/ not/believe) \_\_\_\_\_ me?

6. Can we go somewhere else? I (hate) \_\_\_\_\_ this place. It's so boring.

7. My son (seem) \_\_\_\_\_ nervous when I asked him who had broken the window.

8. Bob (want) \_\_\_\_\_ a car for a long time, but he hasn't had enough money to afford one.

9. They are really rich, but they always seem unhappy. I (doubt) \_\_\_\_\_ that money can't bring them happiness.

10. In 2010, the team (consist) \_\_\_\_\_ of ten founding members, but now it expands to include more than thirty members.

**C. READING**

**I. Read the extract from a short brochure introducing Indonesia. Match the subheadings (A-E) with the paragraphs (1-5)**

*A. Economy*

*B. Sports*

*C. Area and population*

*D. Culture*

*E. Tourist attractions*

\_\_\_\_\_ (1) Indonesia has about 17,508 islands. It covers a land area of 1,904,569km<sup>2</sup>. With a population of over 237 million people, Indonesia is the world's fourth **most populous** country. The capital city is Jakarta and the official language is Indonesian.

\_\_\_\_\_ (2) Indonesia's **economy** is the **largest** in Southeast Asia. Tourism plays a big role in the economy. In 2013 tourist sector contributed about US\$9 billion. Indonesia, Singapore, Malaysia, Australia, China, Japan are the top five sources of visitors to Indonesia.

\_\_\_\_\_ (3) Indonesia's sports are mainly **male-oriented**. The most popular sports are badminton and football. Traditional sports include Sepak Takraw, and Pencak Silat.

\_\_\_\_\_ (4) Indonesia is a **widely diverse** nation with over 300 ethnic groups. Its culture is influenced by Chinese, European, Indian and Malay cultures. The influences of Western cultures are seen in science, technology, and modern entertainment.

\_\_\_\_\_ (5) Indonesia is famous for its islands and beautiful views. The most popular destinations in Indonesia are beaches of Bali, Lombok, wonderful islands of Java, Sumatra, Kalimantan. Museums, monuments and gardens in the capital are also famous tourist attractions.

## **II. Read and do the tasks below.**

### **ASEAN**

#### **A**

The Association of Southeast Asian Nations, commonly referred to as ASEAN, is a geopolitical and economic organization of 10 countries in Southeast Asia. It was established in Bangkok, Thailand by Indonesia, Malaysia, the Philippines, Singapore and Thailand. Since then, membership has expanded to include Brunei, Vietnam, Laos, Myanmar and Cambodia.

#### **B**

ASEAN has a population of about 600 million which makes up about 9% of the world's population. It has an area of 4.46 million square kilometers, accounting for 3% of the total land area of the earth, and its territorial waters cover an area about three times larger than its land mass does.

#### **C**

The region's principal aims include the acceleration of economic growth, social progress, and cultural development among its members, as well as the promotion of regional peace. With these targets, 'One Vision, One Identity, One Community' is chosen as the bloc's motto.

#### **D**

In terms of economy, if ASEAN were a single country, it would already be the eighth largest economy in the world, with a combined GDP of \$2.4 trillion in 2013. The Governments of ASEAN countries have paid special attention to trade. With regard to external trade, ASEAN as a whole represents the EU's third largest trading partner outside Europe (after the US and China) with more than €246 billion

of trade in goods and services in 2014. It has been estimated that a free trade area will be established in the ASEAN region by 2020. The ASEAN leaders have also adopted the ASEAN Vision 2020, which aims at forging closer economic integration within the region. The Hanoi Plan of Action, adopted in 1998, serves as the first in a series of planned actions leading up to the realization of the ASEAN Vision.

E

In addition, ASEAN is a region of diverse cultures. Therefore, ASEAN cooperation not only covers economic growth but also in a variety of areas, including education, culture and sports activities. Student exchange programs within the regional countries are encouraged. Regional sport competitions, such as the Southeast Asian Games, the ASEAN Para Games, the ASEAN Schools Games and the ASEAN Football Championship are held with the aim of strengthening friendship among ASEAN members.

**Task 1. Write A, B, C, D or E next to the statement which contains the information from the paragraph.**

1. ASEAN's sea area is about three times larger than its land area. \_\_\_\_\_
2. In addition to economy, ASEAN countries cooperate in a variety of aspects. \_\_\_\_\_
3. ASEAN organization consists of 10 countries in Southeast Asia. \_\_\_\_\_
4. Maintaining regional peace is one of the bloc's principal aims. \_\_\_\_\_
5. A free trade area is estimated to be formed within ASEAN by 2020. \_\_\_\_\_

**Task 2. Decide whether the following statements are True, False or Not Given.**

	True	False	Not given
6. ASEAN was founded in Bangkok, Thailand by Indonesia, Myanmar, the Philippines, Singapore and Thailand.			
7. ASEAN covers an area of over four million square kilometers.			
8. The bloc's motto is: 'One Vision, One Diversity, One Community.'			
9. ASEAN is the EU's third largest trading partner outside Europe.			
10. ASEAN Schools Games is a sporting event held every year by an ASEAN state member.			

**III. Choose the best answer to fill in the blank.**

**Passage 1**

The Association of Southeast Asian Nations (ASEAN) is an organization of ten Southeast Asian countries: Brunei, Cambodia, Indonesia, Laos, Malaysia, Myanmar, (1) \_\_\_\_\_ Philippines, Singapore, Thailand and Vietnam. It promotes political, economic, cultural and social cooperation (2) \_\_\_\_\_ its members. Although ASEAN works for peace and stability in Southeast Asia, it is not a defence organization.

The members of ASEAN cooperate in such fields (3) \_\_\_\_ population control, prevention of drug abuse, (4) \_\_\_\_ research and combating terrorism. Teachers, students and artists of the member nations exchange visits. In addition, the organization develops plans to promote tourism in ASEAN countries and to encourage programs of Southeast Asian studies. It works to (5) \_\_\_\_ trade barriers among the members.

1. A. the                      B. a                      C. an                      D. Ø
2. A. between                B. through              C. among                D. from
3. A. like                      B. as                      C. alike                    D. that
4. A. scientific              B. science              C. scientist              D. scientifically
5. A. increase                B. prevent              C. develop                D. reduce

**Passage 2.**

The Association of Southeast Asian Nations or ASEAN was (6) \_\_\_\_ on August 8 1967 in Bangkok by the five original member countries, (7) \_\_\_\_, Indonesia, Malaysia, Philippines, Singapore, and Thailand. Brunei Darussalam (8) \_\_\_\_ on January 8, 1984, Vietnam on July 28, 1995, Lao PDR and Myanmar on July 23, 1997, and Cambodia on April 30, 1999.

As of 2006, the ASEAN region has a population of about 560 million, a total area of 4.5 million square kilometers, a combined gross (9) \_\_\_\_ product of almost US\$ 1,100 billion, and a total trade of about US\$ 1,400 billion.

The ASEAN Declaration states that the aims and purposes of the Association are to (10) \_\_\_\_ economic growth, social progress and cultural development in the region and to promote regional peace.

6. A. established            B. constructed            C. rebuilt                    D. decorated
7. A. such                    B. like                      C. namely                    D. as
8. A. took up                B. joined                    C. represented              D. involved
9. A. home                    B. exotic                    C. domestic                D. household
10. A. fetch                    B. endeavor                C. poach                    D. accelerate

**IV. Read the following information about Thailand. Choose the appropriate words or phrases given to fill the gap.**

*agri-food production                      beautiful islands                      famous festivals*  
*Thai boxing                                      population*

1. Land area: 513,120km; \_\_\_\_\_ :67,149,778 (2014 estimated), most speak Thai; capital: Bangkok
2. based on \_\_\_\_\_; major exports: Thai rice, textile and footwear, fishery products and electronic products
3. Ko Tarutao and Ko Chang as \_\_\_\_\_, with sandy beaches and clean water; Ayuthaya as an old and beautiful city, with temples and palaces made of stone

4. shaped by many influences from Indian, Lao, Cambodian and Chinese cultures; \_\_\_\_\_:  
Thai New Year ( water fights) and Loy Kratong, a festival of lights and lanterns
5. very popular \_\_\_\_\_; others: rugby, golf, football, etc.

**V. Read the passage and answer the following questions.**

The Asian Games, officially known as Asiad, is a multi-sport event held every four years among athletes from all over Asia. The Games were regulated by the Asian Games Federation (AGF) from the first Games in New Delhi, India, until the 1982 Games. Since the 1982 they have been organized by the Olympic Council of Asia (OCA), after the break-up of the Asian Games Federation. The Games are recognized by the International Olympic Committee (IOC) and are described as the second largest multi-sport event after the Olympic Games.

**Participation**

All 45 members affiliated to the Olympic Council of Asia (OCA) are eligible to take part in the Games. In history, 46 National Olympic Committees (NOCs) have sent competitors to the Games. Israel has been excluded from the Games since 1976, the reason cited as being due to security reasons. Israel requested to participate in the 1982 Games, but the request was rejected by the organisers due to incident in 1972 Summer Olympics. Israel is now a member of the European Olympic Committees (EOC).

Due to its continuing ambiguous political status, Taiwan has participated in the Games under the flag of Chinese Taipei since 1990. Macau is allowed to compete as one of the NOCs in Asian Games, despite not being recognized by the International Olympic Committee (IOC) for participation in the Olympic Games. In 2007, the President of OCA, Sheikh Ahmed Al-Fahad Al-Ahmed Al-Sabah, rejected the proposal to allow Australia to participate in the Games. He stated that while Australia would add good value to the Asian Games, it would be unfair to the other NOCs in Oceania.

Only seven countries, namely India, Indonesia, Japan, the Philippines, Sri Lanka, Singapore and Thailand have competed in all editions of the games.

**Medal count**

Of the 46 National Olympic Committees participating throughout the history of the Games, 43 nations have won at least a single medal in the competition, leaving three nations: Bhutan, Maldives and Timor-Leste yet to win a single medal. 34 nations have won at least a single gold medal, while Japan and China became the only two nations in history to emerge as overall champions.

**Future changes**

The number of competition events is scheduled to shrink down to just 35 sports at the 2014 Games to be held in Incheon, South Korea. 2014 will also see the last Games hosted in even-numbered years, as the Olympic Council of Asia pushed the subsequent Games to just one year ahead of the Olympic Games. This means the 18<sup>th</sup> Asian Games which were originally planned for 2018 will be pushed to 2019.

1. How many nations have completed in the Asian Games?

---

2. Why was Irasel excluded from the Games?

---

3. How many countries have participated in all editions of the Games?

---

4. What year will be the last time to see the Asian Games be hosted in even numbered years?

---

## D. WRITING

### I. Reorder the words to make complete sentences.

1. doesn't/ Trying/ to/ make/ people/ laugh/ sometimes/ work.

---

2. like/ Saturdays./ on/ doesn't/ getting/ Joe/ early/ up

---

3. much/ big/ was/ Giving/ our/ candy/ mistake./ babies/ so

---

4. my/ seeing/ joys/ in/ greatest/ day/ after/ work./ at/ hard/ is/ life/ love/ a/ of/ One

---

5. music/ is/ to/ a/ great/ pop/ to/ my/ way/ spirits./ Listening/ lift

---

6. recommends/ to/ hotels/ Linda/ reserving/ before/ travelling/ places./ new

---

7. losing/ short-term/ on/ money/ Her/ his/ risks/ father/ investment.

---

8. but/ helping/ me/ truth./ should/ don't/ tell/ I/ mind/ the/ she/ her

---

## PART 3: TEST YOURSELF

### A. PHONETICS

I. Choose the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from that of the others in each group.

- |                         |                      |                      |                    |
|-------------------------|----------------------|----------------------|--------------------|
| 1. A. <u>a</u> pologize | B. <u>a</u> bsorb    | C. <u>a</u> rrive    | D. <u>a</u> bsence |
| 2. A. <u>c</u> ombine   | B. <u>c</u> ollect   | C. <u>c</u> ommerce  | D. <u>c</u> orrect |
| 3. A. <u>a</u> dmiral   | B. <u>a</u> dventure | C. <u>a</u> dvertise | D. <u>a</u> dverb  |



4. A. club                      B. subtle                      C. climb                      D. doubt  
 5. A. boat                      B. both                      C. post                      D. lose

**II. Pick out the words whose main stressed syllable is different from the rest.**

1. A. farmer                      B. farewell                      C. factory                      D. fairy  
 2. A. cattle                      B. country                      C. canal                      D. cover  
 3. A. money                      B. machine                      C. many                      D. mother  
 4. A. borrow                      B. agree                      C. await                      D. prepare  
 5. A government                      B. condition                      C. parliament                      D. fortunate

**B. VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR**

**1. Complete the sentences using the given words.**

*charter                      constitution                      bloc                      principles                      maintain*

1. ASEAN Scholarship holder has to \_\_\_\_\_ good academic performance to keep the scholarship.  
 2. A \_\_\_\_\_ is a written statement that describes the rights a particular group of people should have.  
 3. A \_\_\_\_\_ is a set of fundamental principles or established precedents according to which a state or organization is governed.  
 4. The ASEAN Economic Community is an important example of a trading \_\_\_\_\_, particularly when you consider the countries involved in it.  
 5. She refused to lie about it; it's against her \_\_\_\_\_.

**II. Complete the following sentences using the correct form of the words in brackets.**

1. Development policy has a critical role to play in supporting \_\_\_\_\_ to reduce conflict and violence over the long term. (STABLE)  
 2. CMA stands for The California Medical \_\_\_\_\_ which is a professional organization representing the physicians of the state of California. (ASSOCIATE)  
 3. \_\_\_\_\_ is important because it allows people and groups to work together to achieve a common goal or derive mutual benefits. (COOPERATE)  
 4. \_\_\_\_\_ is unity which produces or is based on unity of interests, objectives, standards, and sympathies. (SOLID)  
 5. A \_\_\_\_\_ is an award of financial aid for a student to further their education. (SCHOLAR)

**III. Choose ONE INCORRECT WORD in each sentence.**

1. Have you washed the car yet? - No, I didn't. But I have already mowed the lawn.

2. He denies take the cakes even though it is obvious that he took them.
3. Casy is considering bought a new bike because her old one was out of order.
4. I know listening is my weakest English skill, so I practise watch a lot of English-speaking shows.
5. How ridiculous it is! He always struggles to make ends meet, but he imagines buy a Ferrari one day.
6. Jucy spend all her money on buying clothes, so she can't pay her rent now.
7. A few days ago I learn that someone has planned to tear down the ancient building.
8. He feels like write since it is a great way to show his creativity.

**IV. Complete each sentence with the correct form of the given word(s).**

1. Prices (go) \_\_\_\_\_ up for a couple of months. Everything is more expensive this year.
2. Ben's responsibilities include (welcome) \_\_\_\_\_ Japanese guests at the airport.
3. Jack (become) \_\_\_\_\_ paralysed since he fell off in a horse racing competition in 2005.
4. She carries on (work) \_\_\_\_\_ on her project despite difficulties.
5. Have you ever baked your own cake? - Yes, I (try) \_\_\_\_\_ it when I was in high school but I haven't baked any cakes since then.
6. I don't mind (go) \_\_\_\_\_ to the market if you accompany me.
7. Your parcel has arrived. The postman (bring) \_\_\_\_\_ it two hours ago.
8. I always (wish) \_\_\_\_\_ every woman in this world a happy life after marriage.

**C. READING**

**I. Decide whether the following statements are True, False or Not given.**

The Association of Southeast Asian Nations (ASEAN) was formed in 1967 by Indonesia, Malaysia, the Philippines, Singapore, and Thailand to promote political and economic cooperation and regional stability. Brunei joined in 1984, shortly after its independence from the United Kingdom, and Vietnam joined ASEAN as its seventh member in 1995. Laos and Myanmar were admitted into full membership in July 1997 as ASEAN celebrated its 30th anniversary. Cambodia became ASEAN's tenth member in 1999.

The ASEAN Declaration in 1967, considered ASEAN's founding document, formalized the principles of peace and cooperation to which ASEAN is dedicated. The ASEAN Charter entered into force on 15 December 2008. With the entry into force of the ASEAN Charter, ASEAN established its legal identity as an international organization and took a major step in its community-building process.

Every year following the ASEAN Ministerial Meeting (AMM), ASEAN holds its Post-Ministerial Conference (PMC) to which the Secretary of State is invited. In 1994, ASEAN took the lead in establishing the ASEAN Regional Forum (ARF), which now has 27 members and meets each year at the ministerial level just after the PMC.

1. ASEAN was formed in 1967 by four countries: Malaysia, Singapore, the Philippines and Thailand.  
 A. True                      B. False                      C. Not given
2. Vietnam joined ASEAN in 1995 after Brunei 11 years.  
 A. True                      B. False                      C. Not given
3. ASEAN celebrated its 30 anniversary in 1997 when Laos and Cambodia became full memberships.  
 A. True                      B. False                      C. Not given
4. ASEAN charter helped this organization become an international organization in 2008.  
 A. True                      B. False                      C. Not given
5. Every year ASEAN has 3 meetings with the attendance of 27 members.  
 A. True                      B. False                      C. Not given

**D. WRITING**

**I. Complete each sentence with one of the given word(s). There are two extra words.**

*reducing*                      *own*                      *Filipino*                      *group*  
*owing*                      *means*                      *increasing*

1. Singapore or Singapura is a city or country in Southeast Asia. Singapura is a Malay word. Singa \_\_\_\_\_ Lion and pura refers to City. That is why Singapore is also known as Lion City.
2. Despite its small size, Singapore is seen as a multi-racial country. The largest \_\_\_\_\_ is Chinese who made up of 75% of the population.
3. Another unique aspect of \_\_\_\_\_ culture is bayanihan, the practice of moving an entire home to a new location.
4. The ASEAN Para Games aims at promoting sports for people with disabilities in the region and \_\_\_\_\_ public awareness of disabled sports.
5. It comes as no surprise that Brunei's population enjoys one of the highest per capita incomes in the world, \_\_\_\_\_ to its wealth of natural resources relative to the size of the country and its population.

**II. Reorder the words or phrases to make complete sentences.**

1. tourist/ tropical/ climate/ with/ an/ ideal/ Thailand/ is/ pleasant/ attraction

---

2. is/ ethnic/ 300/ Indonesia/ to/ over/ groups/ home

---

3. values/ family/ The/ Vietnamese/ appreciate

---

## PART I: PHONETICS

**I. Choose the word that has the underlined part pronounced differently from the others'. Circle A, B, C or D.**

1. A. book                      B. took                      C. goose                      D. good
2. A. worm                      B. worse                      C. work                      D. more
3. A. chaperon                      B. charity                      C. challenge                      D. Charlie
4. A. without                      B. sixth                      C. month                      D. think
5. A. coughed                      B. laughed                      C. weighed                      D. matched

**II. Pick out the word whose stress pattern is different from that of the others. Circle A, B, C or D.**

1. A. private                      B. provide                      C. arrange                      D. advise
2. A. resurface                      B. knowledge                      C. technical                      D. export
3. A. medical                      B. entertainment                      C. atmosphere                      D. suburb
4. A. recipe                      B. cinema                      C. similar                      D. expertise
5. A. indicate                      B. forefinger                      C. procedure                      D. enemy

## PART II: VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR

**I. Supply the correct tense/ form of the verb in brackets.**

1. Teresa (type) \_\_\_\_\_ all day and still (not finish) \_\_\_\_\_ the report.
2. For the past few days I (work) \_\_\_\_\_ in Jack's office, as my own office (redecorate) \_\_\_\_\_.
3. I was terribly disappointed (discover) \_\_\_\_\_ that he (lie) \_\_\_\_\_ to me.
4. The girl got a lot of trouble. She (not tell) \_\_\_\_\_ a lie.
5. I appreciate (tell) \_\_\_\_\_ the news.
6. He really didn't expect (introduce) \_\_\_\_\_ to the president.
7. I don't know why you always (talk) \_\_\_\_\_ in class, boys.

**II. Complete the sentences with the appropriate form of the words in brackets.**

1. Remind me of my appointment. I am \_\_\_\_\_. (FORGET)
2. Recently health foods have increased in \_\_\_\_\_. (POPULAR)
3. Unless something is done about unemployment, the \_\_\_\_\_ for the future is not good. (LOOK)

4. He had been \_\_\_\_\_ delayed at the office and was now in a hurry to keep his appointment with the dentist. (EXPECT)
5. The old lady hid all her \_\_\_\_\_ under the floor. (SAVE)
6. Alison's \_\_\_\_\_ made it hard for her to speak in public. (SHY)
7. He had the \_\_\_\_\_ habit of borrowing books and then forgetting to return them. (ANNOY)
8. All \_\_\_\_\_ must be received before July 20th 2007. (APPLY)
9. I \_\_\_\_\_ met an old friend last week. (EXPECT)
10. You look rather \_\_\_\_\_. Are you worried about something? (OCCUPY)
11. It is much more \_\_\_\_\_ to buy large size packets. (ECONOMY)
12. Earth Hour is a \_\_\_\_\_ event organized to raise people's awareness. (WORLD)

**III. Fill in each numbered space with one suitable preposition.**

1. They say that there is an exception \_\_\_\_\_ every rule.
2. It was very good \_\_\_\_\_ Sue to drive us to the airport.
3. Don't worry, the whole situation is \_\_\_\_\_ control.
4. I'm afraid you are not eligible \_\_\_\_\_ a pension until you are 65.
5. There were no ripe apples \_\_\_\_\_ reach, so I moved the ladder.
6. Breaking his leg a second time put Peter's football career \_\_\_\_\_ jeopardy.
7. What do you get if you divide 22 \_\_\_\_\_ 7? A complicated number.
8. You can rely on her. She won't let you \_\_\_\_\_.
9. Don't eat that sausage. I think it's gone \_\_\_\_\_.
10. It's safe to hide here. We won't give you \_\_\_\_\_.

**PART III: READING**

**I. Read the following passage and choose the best option to complete the blank or answer the question.**

Most human diets contain between 10 and 15 percent of their total calories as protein. The rest of the dietary energy comes from carbohydrates, fats, and in some people, alcohol. The proportion of calories from fats varies from 10 percent in poor communities to 40 percent or more in rich communities.

In addition to providing energy, fats have several other **functions** in the body. The fat-soluble vitamins, A, D, E, and K, are dissolved in fats, as their name implies. Good sources of these vitamins have high oil or fat content, and the vitamins are **stored in** the body's fatty tissues. In the diet, fats cause food to remain longer in the stomach, thus increasing the feeling of fullness for some time after a meal is eaten. Fats add variety, taste, and texture to foods, which accounts for the popularity of fried foods. Fatty deposits

in the body have an insulating and protective value. The curves of the human female body are due mostly to strategically located fat deposits.

Whether a certain amount of fat in the diet is **essential to** human health is not definitely known. When rats are fed a fat-free diet, their growth eventually ceases, their skin becomes inflamed and scaly, and their reproductive systems are damaged. Two fatty acids, linoleic and arachidonic acids, prevent **these abnormalities** and hence are called essential fatty acids. They also are required by a number of other animals, but their roles in human beings are debatable. Most nutritionists consider linoleic fatty acid an essential nutrient for humans.

1. This passage probably appeared in which of the following?  
A. diet book  
B. A book on basic nutrition  
C. A cookbook  
D. A popular women's magazine
2. We can infer from the passage that all of the following statements about fats are true EXCEPT \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. fats provide energy for the body  
B. economics influences the distribution of calorie intake  
C. poor people eat more fatty foods  
D. alcohol is not a common source of dietary energy
3. The word "**functions**" in bold is closest in meaning to \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. forms  
B. needs  
C. jobs  
D. sources
4. The phrase "**stored in**" in bold is closest in meaning to \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. manufactured in  
B. attached to  
C. measured by  
D. accumulated in
5. The author states that fats serve all of the following body functions EXCEPT to \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. promote a feeling of fullness  
B. insulate and protect the body  
C. provide energy  
D. control weight gain
6. The word "**essential to**" in bold is closest in meaning to \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. required for  
B. desired for  
C. detrimental to  
D. beneficial to
7. According to the author of the passage, which of the following is true for rats when they are fed a fat free diet?  
A. They stop growing  
B. They have more babies  
C. They lose body hair  
D. They require less care
8. Linoleic fatty acid is mentioned in the passage as \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. an essential nutrient for humans  
B. more useful than arachidonic acid  
C. preventing weight gain in rats  
D. a nutrient found in most foods
9. The phrase "**these abnormalities**" refers to \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. a condition caused by fried foods
- B. strategically located fat deposits
- C. curves on the human female body
- D. cessation of growth, bad skin, and damaged reproductive systems

10. That humans should all have some fat our diet is, according to the author, \_\_\_\_.

- A. a commonly held view
- B. not yet a proven fact
- C. only true for women
- D. proven to be true by experiments in rats

**II. Read the text below and decide which answer (A, B, C, or D) best fits each space.**

### FRIDAY THE THIRTEENTH

Police are hunting for a hit-and-run driver who knocked a teenage cyclist off her bike in East Street. Sarah Tucker, 17, had a lucky escape on Friday, 13th May, when she was sent reeling by a black Volvo on her way home from work.

She bruised her thigh and shoulder and her bicycle was (1) \_\_\_\_\_. The driver stopped for a moment but then drove off without (2) \_\_\_\_\_ a name or address and before Sarah could get his number. "I tried to get out of his way, but I couldn't," she said. Everyone at work kept going on about it being Friday 13th. I'm not a bit (3) \_\_\_\_\_ and wouldn't change any of my plans just because Friday 13th is supposed to be unlucky, I don't usually take any (4) \_\_\_\_\_ of that sort of thing but I will now. I think I'll stay in bed."

The accident (5) \_\_\_\_\_ at the junction with Westwood Road at about 6.30pm as Sarah was making her (6) \_\_\_\_\_ home to the Harley Estate.

The Volvo pulled out of Westwood onto Henley Road in front of the teenager's bicycle. "He could at (7) \_\_\_\_\_ have helped her up. I don't see why he should get away with it," said her father, Derek, "Sarah was lucky. I don't know why the driver didn't see her. He can't have been (8) \_\_\_\_\_ attention. It is unfortunate that nobody took down the number." Though still too (9) \_\_\_\_\_ to ride a bike, Sarah was able to go back to (10) \_\_\_\_\_ in Marlow on Monday.

- |                   |                  |                 |               |
|-------------------|------------------|-----------------|---------------|
| 1. A. damaged     | B. harmed        | C. devastated   | D. crashed    |
| 2. A. noting      | B. presenting    | C. leaving      | D. suggesting |
| 3. A. irrational  | B. superstitious | C. unreasonable | D. prejudices |
| 4. A. notice      | B. consideration | C. note         | D. care       |
| 5. A. came about  | B. turned up     | C. finished up  | D. took place |
| 6. A. route       | B. way           | C. course       | D. path       |
| 7. A. once        | B. most          | C. least        | D. best       |
| 8. A. giving      | B. paying        | C. attracting   | D. providing  |
| 9. A. discouraged | B. confused      | C. overcome     | D. shaken     |

10. A. work            B. job            C. post            D. employment

**PART IV: WRITING**

**I. Finish the second sentence in each pair in such a way that it means the same as the sentence before it.**

1. The house was so badly damaged in the fire that it couldn't be repaired.

The house was too

---

2. You won't reach the station in less than twenty minutes.

It will take

---

3. The collision didn't damage my car much.

Not a great

---

4. Just thinking about his face at that moment makes me laugh.

The very

---

5. I took my car to the garage last Saturday and they resprayed it.

I had

---

6. Although Christopher was the stronger of the two, his attacker soon overpowered him.

Despite his

---

7. What a surprise to see you here!

Fancy

---

8. It was only when I left home that I realised how much my father meant to me.

Not until

---

9. The house collapsed because of faulty building work.

It was

---

10. The boys clearly intended to make trouble when they entered the hotel.



The boys were

---

**II. Write the second sentence in such a way that it is as similar as possible in meaning to the original sentence. Use the word given in brackets and other words as necessary. Do not change the form of the given word.**

1. Dickens' last novel was unfinished when he died. (WITHOUT)

---
2. John was shocked to hear that he had failed his driving test. (CAME)

---
3. He is likely to come. (PROBABILITY)

---
4. Mathew didn't listen to what his doctor told him. (NOTICE)

---
5. I don't feel like going to the party. (MOOD)

---
6. The new manager blames me for everything that goes wrong. (PICKING)

---
7. He talked about nothing except the weather. (SOLE)

---
8. In the end, I felt I had been right to leave the club. (REGRETS)

---
9. He is different from his brother in almost all aspects. (BEARS)

---
10. The passengers don't realise how lucky they have been. (LITTLE)

---

## Unit 6. LOBAL WARMING

### PART 1: VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR REVIEW

#### A. VOCABULARY

absorb	/əb'zɔ:b/	(v)	thấm, hút
atmosphere	/'ætməsfɪə(r)/	(n)	khí quyển
awareness	/ə'weənəs/	(n)	sự nhận thức, hiểu biết, quan tâm
ban	/bæn/	(v)	cấm
capture	/'kæptʃə(r)/	(v)	lưu lại, giam giữ lại

carbon footprint	/,kɑ:bən 'fʊtprɪnt/	(n)	lượng khí CO, thải ra hằng ngày của một cá nhân hoặc nhà máy...
catastrophic	/,kætə'strɒfɪk/	(adj)	thảm họa
clean-up	/'kli:n ʌp/	(n)	sự dọn dẹp, làm sạch, tổng vệ sinh
climate change	/'klaɪmət tʃeɪndʒ/	(n)	biến đổi khí hậu
diversity	/daɪ'vɜ:səti/	(n)	sự đa dạng
drought	/draʊt/	(n)	hạn hán
ecological	/,i:kə'lɒdʒɪkl/	(adj)	thuộc về sinh thái
ecosystem	/'i:kəʊsɪstəm/	(n)	hệ sinh thái
emission	/'i:mɪʃn/	(n)	(danh từ không đếm được) sự phát (sáng), tỏa (nhiệt), xả (khí)
famine	/'fæmɪn/	(n)	nạn đói kém
greenhouse gas	/,gri:nhaʊs 'gæs/	(n)	chất khí gây hiệu ứng nhà kính
heat-related	/hi:t - rɪ'leɪtɪd /	(adj)	có liên quan tới nhiệt
infectious	/ɪn'fekʃəs/	(adj)	lây nhiễm, lan truyền
oil spill	/'ɔɪl - spɪl/	(n.p)	tràn dầu

## B. GRAMMAR REVIEW

### \* PHÂN TỬ: 2 LOẠI

Present participle (phân tử hiện tại): + Ving (dùng cho active): đơn  
 + Having P<sub>II</sub>: hoàn thành

Past participle (phân tử quá khứ): + P<sub>II</sub> (Passive)  
 + Having been P<sub>II</sub>

### 1. Một chủ ngữ thực hiện hai hay nhiều hoạt động đồng thời

**S + V<sub>1</sub>....., Ving.....**  
**(thực thể)**

Ex: - He walked along the street, singing massively.  
 - My neighbor fell off the ladder, breaking three teeth.

### 2. Kết hợp 2 câu đơn

**S<sub>1</sub> + V<sub>1</sub> ....., S<sub>2</sub> + V<sub>2</sub> .....**  
**→ Ving / Having P<sub>II</sub> ....., S<sub>1</sub> + V<sub>2</sub>**

→ P<sub>II</sub> / having been P<sub>II</sub>, S<sub>1</sub> + V<sub>2</sub>

Ex: Susan felt tired. She went to bed early.

→ Feeling tired, Susan went to bed early.

Ex: He was punished by the teacher. He was sad.

→ Punished by the teacher, he was sad.

Ex: They have lived here for a long time. They know about it clearly.

→ Having lived here for a long time, they know about it clearly.

### 3. Rút gọn mệnh đề quan hệ:

S<sub>(N)</sub> + Ving + ... + be/V...

S<sub>(N)</sub> + P<sub>II</sub> (chia thì) + be/V...

S + be/ V + O<sub>(N)</sub> | + Ving

(chia thì) | + P<sub>II</sub>

Ex: The man who lives next to me is a doctor.

→ The man living next to me is a doctor.

Ex: Many things considered impossible in the past have come in reality now.

## PART 2: EXERCISES

### A. PHONETICS

#### I. Find the word which has a different sound in the part underlined.

1. A. dinner                      B. disappear                      C. discover                      D. dinosaur
2. A. robot                      B. robe                      C. rock                      D. role
3. A. constant                      B. modern                      C. obvious                      D. robot
4. A. continue                      B. finish                      C. likely                      D. instant
5. A. annual                      B. basic                      C. average                      D. capacity

#### II. Choose the word which has a different stress pattern from the others.

1. A. importance                      B. happiness                      C. employment                      D. relation
2. A. possible                      B. cultural                      C. confident                      D. supportive
3. A. office                      B. nature                      C. result                      D. farmer
4. A. difficult                      B. popular                      C. effective                      D. national
5. A. answer                      B. reply                      C. singer                      D. future

### B. VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR

**1. Choose the correct word in the bracket to complete the sentences.**

*deforestation*      *heat-related*      *emissions*      *extinction*      *absorb*  
*catastrophic*      *footprint*      *diversity*      *preserve*      *infectious*

1. Global warming has proved truly \_\_\_\_\_ for the environment.
2. Having measured the company's carbon \_\_\_\_\_, they realised that the amount of carbon dioxide (CO) it produced was great.
3. Rainforests have the highest species \_\_\_\_\_ on the earth.
4. We need to \_\_\_\_\_ the diversity of wildlife because each species has an important role to play.
5. Scientists have warned about the relationship between climate change and the spread of \_\_\_\_\_ diseases.
6. The alarming rate of \_\_\_\_\_ results in damage to the quality of the land.
7. The increase in the earth's temperature can cause \_\_\_\_\_ illnesses which can be dangerous to people.
8. A large amount of carbon dioxide \_\_\_\_\_ are released into the atmosphere by burning fossil fuels.
9. Many species are threatened with \_\_\_\_\_ due to deforestation and loss of habit.
10. More trees should be planted as they \_\_\_\_\_ carbon dioxide and give off oxygen.

**II. Use the word given in capitals at the end of each line to form the word that fits in the gap in the same line.**

1. Global warming may lead to \_\_\_\_\_ weather events, including heat waves, floods, and powerful storms, which could affect people's lives. (EXTREMELY)
2. Every one of us can help to protect and sustain our environment by \_\_\_\_\_ our consumption habits. (CHANGE)
3. Even slight increase in the levels of carbon dioxide in the atmosphere can cause a \_\_\_\_\_ rise in temperature. (SIGNIFICANCE)
4. There is a \_\_\_\_\_ between the recent droughts and climate change. (CONNECT)
5. Farming contributes more than 30 percent of the total greenhouse gas \_\_\_\_\_. (EMIT)
6. The overuse of chemical \_\_\_\_\_ is a serious threat to the environment. (FERTILIZE)
7. Global warming is the increase in the earth's average surface temperature due to the warming \_\_\_\_\_ of greenhouse gases. (EFFECTIVE)

8. The main cause of \_\_\_\_\_ warming is the burning of fossil fuels, such as natural gas, oil, and coal. (GLOBE)
9. The \_\_\_\_\_ of the earth's atmosphere causes sea-level rise. (WARM)
10. Many animal species are in danger of extinction due to the loss of their habitat and inability to \_\_\_\_\_ to climate change. (ADAPTION)

**III. Choose the best answer A, B, C or D to complete the sentences.**

1. Developed countries are responsible for 80% of the \_\_\_\_ carbon dioxide that is already in the atmosphere.
- A. man-made      B. men-made      C. man-making      D. man-mades
2. The government must take \_\_\_\_ to cut vehicle emissions.
- A. measures      B. repeat      C. discover      D. ban
3. They didn't forget \_\_\_\_ a short vacation in Cuc Phuong National Park last year.
- A. being spent      B. having been spent      C. to spend      D. having spent
4. The effects of climate change on humans and nature are \_\_\_\_.
- A. catastrophic      B. temperature      C. global      D. risk
5. A layer of greenhouse gases – primarily water vapor, and carbon dioxide - acts as a \_\_\_\_ blanket for the Earth, absorbing heat and warming the surface.
- A. heat      B. heating      C. thermal      D. hot
6. We admired the Japanese \_\_\_\_ the city of Fukushima after the disaster.
- A. to being rebuilt      B. for having rebuilt      C. to rebuild      D. of having rebuilt
7. We need to preserve the \_\_\_\_ of wildlife because each species has an important role to play.
- A. diversity      B. various      C. population      D. type
8. Most climate scientists agree the main cause of the current global warming trend is human expansion of the greenhouse \_\_\_\_.
- A. gas      B. damage      C. cause      D. effect
9. \_\_\_\_ trees around the house on the south and west sides, they can save up to about \$250 a year on cooling and heating.
- A. Having planted      B. Being planted      C. To plant      D. To have planted
10. The increase in the earth's temperature can cause \_\_\_\_ illness which can be dangerous to people.
- A. heat-related      B. heat-relate      C. heat-relating      D. heated-relate
11. Certain \_\_\_\_ in the atmosphere, such as carbon dioxide, methane and nitrous oxide, block heat from escaping.
- A. gases      B. layers      C. effects      D. emissions

12. Having developed green technologies with low-carbon emissions, \_\_\_\_ intends to get rid of coal.  
 A. that country      B. the communities      C. the effort      D. the possibility
13. Carbon dioxide is one of the primary \_\_\_\_ gases that cause global warming.  
 A. greenhouse      B. house      C. plant      D. home
14. Carbon dioxide is released through \_\_\_\_ processes such as respiration and volcano eruptions and through \_\_\_\_ activities such as deforestation, land use change, and burning fossil fuels.  
 A. man-made      B. ordinary-man-made      C. human natural      D. natural-human
15. Vietnam has been named among the 12 countries most \_\_\_\_ for climate change by the World Bank.  
 A. at danger      B. in risk      C. at risk      D. ready

### C. READING

**I. Fill each of the numbered blanks in the following passage. Use only one word in each space.**

*landslides      biodiversity      conditions      temperature      rainfall*  
*economic      farmland      impacts      agencies      support*

#### **Vietnam Likely to Face Extreme Weather Conditions by 2050**

Vietnam is likely to continue facing extreme weather (1) \_\_\_\_\_ such as higher (2) \_\_\_\_\_, lower summer rainfalls, stronger storms, and rising sea levels from now to 2050. Temperature in northern Vietnam will rise by between 0.83 degrees Celsius by 2050 and continue its uptrend during the late 21<sup>st</sup> century. Summer (3) \_\_\_\_\_ will decline in most areas. Meanwhile, storms may become rarer but fiercer, causing possible flash floods and (4) \_\_\_\_\_ in flood-prone areas of northern mountains, central and central highland provinces. The forecasts suggest sea level rise of 100mm-400mm along the entire Vietnamese coast by the end of the 21<sup>st</sup> century, affecting marine (5) \_\_\_\_\_ and coastal communities. The experts emphasize the unpredictability of climate change and its potential (6) \_\_\_\_\_ to create a variety of dangerous extreme weather events in the future.

To raise the public awareness of climate change impacts, the Vietnamese government urges concerned (7) \_\_\_\_\_ to work together on devising worst-case scenario models and responses by 2020 and calls on international experts to further (8) \_\_\_\_\_ Vietnam in climate change adaptation. Climate change is a real threat to Viet Nam's socio-(9) \_\_\_\_\_ development. If sea levels rose one meter, five percent of the country's land, eleven percent of its population and percent of its (10) \_\_\_\_\_ would be affects.

**II. Choose the word or phrase among A, B, C or D that best fits the blank space in the following passage.**

#### **Consequences of Global Warming on Wildlife**

Increasing global temperatures are expected to (1) \_\_\_\_ ecosystems, pushing extinction to those species that cannot adapt. The first comprehensive assessment of the extinction risk (2) \_\_\_\_ global warming found that more than 1 million species could be extinctive by 2050 if the current rate continues.

A recent study of (3) \_\_\_\_ 2,000 species of plants and animals discovered movement toward the poles at an average rate 3.8 miles per decade.

The latest climate change report found that approximately 20 to 30 percent of plant and animal species assessed so far are likely to be at (4) \_\_\_\_ risk of extinction if global average temperature increases by more than 2.7 to 4.5 degree Fahrenheit.

(5) \_\_\_\_ polar bears are drowning because they have to swim longer distances to reach ice floes. The U.S. Geological Survey has predicted that (6) \_\_\_\_ of the world's polar bear populations will be extinct by the mid-century due to melting of the Arctic ice cap.

The ocean will continue to become more acidic due to carbon dioxide emissions. (7) \_\_\_\_ this acidification, species with hard calcium carbonate shells are vulnerable, as are coral reefs, (8) \_\_\_\_ are vital to ocean ecosystems. Scientists predict that a 3.6 degree Fahrenheit increase (9) \_\_\_\_ temperature would (10) \_\_\_\_ out 97 percent of the world's coral feels.

- |                 |               |               |                |
|-----------------|---------------|---------------|----------------|
| 1. A. endanger  | B. benefit    | C. harm       | D. use         |
| 2. A. to        | B. from       | C. off        | D. on          |
| 3. A. nearly    | B. near       | C. relatively | D. wealthy     |
| 4. A. declined  | B. born       | C. presented  | D. increased   |
| 5. A. Some      | B. Few        | C. More       | D. Little      |
| 6. A. two-third | B. two-thirds | C. two-three  | D. two-thirdth |
| 7. A. As        | B. Due        | C. Because    | D. Because of  |
| 8. A. that      | B. when       | C. which      | D. who         |
| 9. A. away      | B. in         | C. at         | D. of          |
| 10. A. send     | B. broke      | C. wipe       | D. lay         |

### III. Read the passage and choose the best answer.

The world's oceans have warmed 50 percent faster over the last 40 years than previously thought due to climate change, Australian and US climate researchers reported Wednesday. Higher ocean temperatures expand the volume of water, contributing to a rise in sea levels that is submerging small island nations and threatening to wreak havoc in low-lying, densely populated delta regions around the globe.

The study, published in the British journal Nature, adds to a growing scientific chorus of warnings about the pace and consequences rising oceans. It also serves as a corrective to a massive report issued last

year by the Nobel-winning UN Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (IPCC), according to the authors.

Rising sea levels are driven by two things: the thermal expansion of sea water, and additional water from melting sources of ice. Both processes are caused by global warming. The ice sheet that sits atop Greenland, for example, contains enough water to raise world ocean levels by seven metres (23 feet), which would bury sea-level cities from Dhaka to Shanghai.

Trying to figure out how much each of these factors contributes to rising sea levels is critically important to understanding climate change, and forecasting future temperature rises, scientists say. But up to now, there has been a perplexing gap between the projections of computer-based climate models, and the observations of scientists gathering data from the oceans.

The new study, led by Catia Domingues of the Centre for Australian Weather and Climate Research, is the first to reconcile the models with observed data. Using new techniques to assess ocean temperatures to a depth of 700 metres (2,300 feet) from 1961 to 2003, it shows that thermal warming contributed to a 0.53 millimetre-per-year rise in sea levels rather than the 0.32 mm rise reported by the IPCC.

1. Ultimately, the new study should help scientists to \_\_\_\_\_.
  - A. lower water levels.
  - B. better predict climate change.
  - C. bury sea-level cities like Dhaka and Shanghai.
2. The rise in water levels is especially dangerous for small island nations and \_\_\_\_\_.
  - A. low-lying urban areas.
  - B. all coastal cities.
  - C. people who live on the beach.
3. What happens when the ocean's temperature rises?
  - A. It causes sea levels to rise.
  - B. It causes sea levels to remain constant.
  - C. It causes sea levels to decrease.
4. What was the main finding of the study?
  - A. not enough is being done about global warming.
  - B. ocean waters have warmed faster than scientists had previously thought.
  - C. the warming of the world's oceans is not a threat.
5. The new study \_\_\_\_\_.
  - A. shows that thermal warming contributed to a 0.32 millimeter-per-year rise in sea levels.



B. did not reveal anything that scientists didn't already know.

C. used new techniques to assess ocean temperatures.

#### **D. WRITING**

##### **I. Rewrite the sentences, using perfect gerunds.**

1. Nam won a scholarship. We are excited about that fact.

→ We are

---

2. Entering the room, I was surprised at what I saw.

→ When

---

3. The volunteers couldn't mow the old lady's lawns because of the rain.

→ The rain prevented

---

4. Since we have become too dependent on the use of electricity, we have to find alternative sources of energy before fossil fuels run out.

→ Having

---

---

5. Tonya had dumped a lot of rubbish on the beach. She was strongly criticised for that.

→ Tonya was

---

6. In the Tree Planting Competition, the students in Group 11G planted the most trees in the schoolyard. They were praised for that.

→ The students in

---

---

7. After she replaced all the light bulbs in her house with LED lights, she saved a lot of money on her electricity bills.

→ Having

---

8. Sam had not worked hard enough in his previous job. He regretted it.

→ Sam regretted

---

9. Someone had cut down the oldest tree in the park. The police suspected Mike of doing it.

→ The police suspected

---

10. Since the farmers used too much chemical fertiliser on their farm, they now have to drink polluted water.

→ Having

---

11. Denis had taken an active part in the Green Summer activities. He was rewarded for that.

→ Denis was

---

12. After the students had learnt about the benefits of recycling and reusing, they started collecting waste paper, bottles, and cans to recycle and reuse.

→ Having

---

---

## II. Rewrite the sentences, using perfect gerunds.

1. David did his homework and they went to bed.

→ After having

---

2. It is easy for anyone to learn how to cook.

→ Learning

---

3. Tony had rescued the kids from the fire. People admired him for that.

→ People

---

4. He had dumped lots of rubbish onto the beach. He denied it.

→ He denied

---

5. After Ha had read some documents about Green Earth, she decided to join the organization.

→ Having

---

6. I have seen him before. I remember that.

→ I

---

7. You had saved the lives of hundreds of wild animals. Thank you for that.

→ Thank you

---

8. They had hunted and killed many wild animals. Later they regretted what they had done.

→ They regretted

---

9. Since Mai had refused Nam's offer of a lift in his car, she had to walk home.

→ Having

---

10. 'You've lied to us, the villagers said. The politician denied it.

→ The politician

---

11. The factory had dumped tons of toxic waste into the river. It was heavily fined for that.

→ The factory

---

12. Thanh had forgotten to turn off the gas cooker before he left his house. He admitted that.

→ Thanh admitted

---

### **III. Rewrite the following sentences using Perfect Participle.**

Ex: We switched off the lights before we went to bed.

→ *Having switched off the lights, we went to bed.*

1. Zoe had practiced a lot, so she was sure of her winning in the competition.

---

2. The boy asked his mother's permission and then went out to play.

---

3. As he had drunk too much, he didn't drive home himself.

---

4. We have done two tests today, so we are exhausted.

---

5. She filled the washing machine and switched it on.

---

6. She had been to disco the night before and she overslept in the morning.

---

7. We had worked in the garden all day and were sunburned in the evening.

---

8. She had not slept for two days and therefore she wasn't able to concentrate.

---

9. Since I had not seen him for ages, I didn't recognize him.

---

10. I had not ridden a horse for a long time and I found it very difficult to sit on the saddle.

---

**IV. Rewrite the following sentences using After or Before.**

1. I told him off. Then I realized I was wrong.

→ *After having told him off, I realized I was wrong.*

2. I worked very hard for the exam. Then I passed it.

→ Before

---

3. First I considered what to study. Then I decided to major in Maths.

→ After

---

4. She wrote a letter. Then she went to bed.

→ After

---

5. He bought a radio. First he checked the price.

→ After

---

6. They argued. Then they fought.

→ After

---

7. She went out for a walk. Then she had a fatal accident.

→ Before

---

8. She decided to go away. First she faced the matter.

→ After

---

9. We read the book, then we wrote the assignment.

→ Before

---

10. She watched the film, then she wrote a report.

→ After

---

### PART 3: TEST YOURSELF

#### I. Find the word which has a different sound in the part underlined.

1. A. sale                      B. serve                      C. sure                      D. sort
2. A. age                      B. altogether                      C. change                      D. college
3. A. mercury                      B. mermaid                      C. merriment                      D. servant
4. A. solar                      B. cost                      C. knowledge                      D. impossible
5. A. appear                      B. measure                      C. nuclear                      D. year

#### II. Choose the word which has a different stress pattern from the others.

1. A. commitee                      B. scientific                      C. pagoda                      D. computer
2. A. lotion                      B. escape                      C. prefer                      D. review
3. A. commerce                      B. consent                      C. access                      D. advent
4. A. mysterious                      B. historical                      C. heritage                      D. particular
5. A. discriminate                      B. accurate                      C. transparent                      D. benevolent

#### III. Choose the best answer A, B, C or D to complete the sentences.

1. Planting trees can contribute to reducing global warming as trees \_\_\_\_ and absorb CO in the air.  
A. capture                      B. pasture                      C. calculate                      D. appear
2. A strong greenhouse effect will warm the ocean and partially melt glaciers, increasing \_\_\_\_.  
A. sea level                      B. temperature                      C. sea water                      D. pollution
3. The next dry season will be extremely severe \_\_\_\_ further saltwater intrusion, water and rain shortages, and heat waves.  
A. due to                      B. thanks to                      C. because                      D. although
4. Climate change may lead to the extinction of many species and upset the \_\_\_\_ balance.  
A. ecological                      B. biology                      C. geography                      D. technology
5. Ocean water also will expand if it warm, \_\_\_\_ further to sea level rise.  
A. leading                      B. contributing                      C. getting                      D. making

6. Methane is a far more active \_\_\_\_ than carbon dioxide, but also one which is much less abundant in the atmosphere.
- A. climate change    B. emission    C. greenhouse gas    D. greenhouse effect
7. The government must take measures to cut \_\_\_\_ emissions.
- A. vehicle    B. transportation    C. transfer    D. convert
8. The cleaning of land for agricultural, industry, and other human activities have increased \_\_\_\_ of greenhouse gases.
- A. lots    B. collections    C. concentration    D. attention
9. The low \_\_\_\_ in the Mekong Delta leads to acute saline intrusion much deeper than the traditional 30 to 40 km of mainland that is contaminated with saltwater.
- A. water level    B. salt water    C. water currents    D. sea level
10. Buying organic food is better for the environment because it uses less \_\_\_\_.
- A. fertilizer    B. fertilize    C. fertilizes    D. fertilized
11. Humans \_\_\_\_ atmospheric carbon dioxide concentration by a third since the Industrial Revolution began.
- A. had increased    B. were increasing    C. Increase    D. have increased
12. All of the disasters resulted from \_\_\_\_ will continue to have a devastating effect on socio-economic development.
- A. ecological balance    B. carbon footprint    C. floods    D. climate change
13. The simplest way to reduce your \_\_\_\_ footprint is to cycle to school.
- A. carbon    B. chemical    C. chemistry    D. dioxide
14. \_\_\_\_ the desalination plant, the company could offer an effective solution to the problem of water scarcity.
- A. Being built    B. Having been built    C. To build    D. Having built
15. Sea level rise is usually regarded as Vietnam's main \_\_\_\_: a one-meter rise would submerge 40 percent of the country and make millions homeless.
- A. concern    B. disaster    C. hope    D. destruction
16. Replace all the light bulbs in your home with \_\_\_\_ bulbs.
- A. energy-saving    B. energy-save    C. energy-saves    D. energy-saved
17. The public praised the local farmers for \_\_\_\_ millions of trees of the surrounding hills.
- A. being planting    B. having planted    C. plant    D. being planted
18. Leaving your DVD player on standby produces the same carbon \_\_\_\_ each year as the average person of Burundi.

A. emissions

B. releases

C. eruptions

D. appearance

**IV. Choose the correct word in the box to complete the sentences.**

*capture*

*greenhouse*

*illnesses*

*ecological*

*emissions*

*dioxide*

*balance*

*catastrophic*

*climate*

*energy*

1. Carbon dioxide is one of the primary \_\_\_\_\_ gases that cause global warming.
2. Deforestation is one of the biggest environmental threats to the \_\_\_\_\_ balance in the world.
3. There are many ways for us to reduce our carbon \_\_\_\_\_ order to save our environment.
4. The effects of climate change on humans and nature are \_\_\_\_\_.
5. I believe that the only way for us to reduce global warming is to cut down on \_\_\_\_\_ use.
6. Planting trees can contribute to reducing global warming as trees \_\_\_\_\_ and absorb CO<sub>2</sub> in the air.
7. As global temperature rise, there are more cases of heat-related \_\_\_\_\_.
8. Motor vehicles running on petrol are responsible for a large amount of carbon dioxide \_\_\_\_\_.
9. Climate change may lead to the extinction of many species and upset the ecological \_\_\_\_\_.
10. Although global warming is causing changes in weather patterns, it is only one aspect of \_\_\_\_\_ change.

**V. Choose the word in the box to complete the text.**

*radiation*

*networks*

*overall*

*flooding*

*vulnerable*

*systems*

*throughout*

*sensitive*

*increased*

*urbanization*

Global warming and cooling have occurred naturally (1) \_\_\_\_\_ history. But in the last 200 years, humans' uses of fossil fuels and clear cutting of forests have (2) \_\_\_\_\_ the amount of carbon dioxide and other gases in the atmosphere. These gases trap some of the (3) \_\_\_\_\_ from the sun which then increases the Earth's temperature. Given the current state of environmental pollution caused by human activities, scientists believe the average temperature of the earth may increase 1-2 degrees Celsius which put simply, means some places will get much hotter and some much colder. At

the same time, this (4) \_\_\_\_\_ warming effect means more frequent and more intense weather systems, especially in terms of flooding and drought.

Vietnam is one of the most (5) \_\_\_\_\_ environments due to its location on the planet. It is already subject to some of the earth's most powerful weather systems and the increased frequency and intensity of storms will affect it often and directly, especially in coastal areas where most people live.

Various estimates have been made as to the possible impacts. The most directly affected sector will be agriculture, which is very (6) \_\_\_\_\_ to flooding and the effects of extreme weather.

Vietnam has the advantage of coming relatively late into the industrialization, (7) \_\_\_\_\_, and modernization process. This means it can avoid many of the mistakes made by wealthier industrial countries. For example, wireless communication (8) \_\_\_\_\_ can be built from the start rather than installing lines that can be destroyed in extreme weather. Cities can be designed and located in less vulnerable locations. Climate-friendly building codes and standards can be created that are both more efficient and less prone to heat stress, wind damage, and (9) \_\_\_\_\_. Climate friendly transport (10) \_\_\_\_\_, especially public transport, can be adopted.

**VI. Choose the word or phrase among A, B, C or D that best fits the blank space in the following passage.**

Global warming is primarily a problem of too much carbon dioxide in the atmosphere, (1) \_\_\_\_ acts as a blanket, trapping heat and the planet. (2) \_\_\_\_\_, the average surface temperature has increases more than one degree Fahrenheit since the late 1800s. Most of that increase has occurred over the past three decades.

We are overloading our atmosphere with carbon dioxide, which traps heat and steadily drives up the planet's temperature. Carbon dioxide comes from the fossil fuels we burn for energy, such as coal, natural gas, and oil, and the loss of forests due to (3) \_\_\_\_\_, especially in the tropics.

Within the scientific community, there is no debate. (4) \_\_\_\_\_ scientists agree that global (5) \_\_\_\_\_ is happening and that human activity is the primary cause.

Global warming is already having significant and costly effects- and these consequences will only intensify as the planet's temperature continues to rise. Global warming is accelerating the (6) \_\_\_\_\_ of sea level rise and dramatically increasing coastal flooding risk. Climate change has significant effects for our health, including increased air pollution and a longer and (7) \_\_\_\_\_ intense allergy season.

We must significantly reduce the heat-trapping (8) \_\_\_\_\_ we are putting into the atmosphere. As individuals, we can help by taking action to reduce our carbon footprint. Tropical deforestation accounts for about 10 percent of the world's heat trapping emissions. Reducing tropical deforestation can



significantly lower global warming emissions and plays an integral role in a long-term solution to global warming.

Sometimes it is difficult to achieve meaningful (9) \_\_\_\_ to global warming because misinformation about the truth of global warming misleads and confuses the public and makes it more difficult to carry (10) \_\_\_\_ effective solutions.

- |                     |               |              |                  |
|---------------------|---------------|--------------|------------------|
| 1. A. that          | B. which      | C. who       | D. when          |
| 2. A. Global        | B. Globalness | C. Globally  | D. Globe         |
| 3. A. deforestation | B. culture    | C. relation  | D. afforestation |
| 4. A. Most of       | B. Mostly     | C. Most      | D. Almost        |
| 5. A. wrapping      | B. proving    | C. offering  | D. warming       |
| 6. A. number        | B. rate       | C. amount    | D. part          |
| 7. A. more          | B. few        | C. less      | D. little        |
| 8. A. inclusions    | B. ceremony   | C. emissions | D. creations     |
| 9. A. factor        | B. stories    | C. problems  | D. solutions     |
| 10. A. out          | B. in         | C. on        | D. away          |

**VII. Read a text about common wedding rituals in the USA and answer the questions that follow.**

One of the factors in global warming is carbon monoxide. The more carbon monoxide in the atmosphere, the less the atmosphere is able to clean itself. The result is a warming of the atmosphere, the so-called global warming, and possibly ozone damage.

Earlier, it was found that carbon monoxide was concentrated in the Southern Hemisphere, and could be attributed to deforestation. Huge areas of forest and grasslands in South America and Africa have been burned, putting carbon monoxide into the atmosphere. Recently, however, the Southern Hemisphere has been found to be clean, while the Northern Hemisphere is more polluted than expected.

The latest research was done during the northern winter. The high levels in the Northern Hemisphere could be because of this. In winter carbon monoxide is destroyed more slowly. There are also more fires burned in winter, and possibly industrial processes work harder. It could also reflect the ever-increasing number of cars on the roads. Optimists hope that the reason why the North has overtaken the South as the major area of carbon monoxide is that at last the burning has stopped, or at least slowed down.

1. Which of the following is the best title for the passage?

- |                                   |                                       |
|-----------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| A. Global warming.                | B. Carbon monoxide in the atmosphere. |
| C. The warming of the atmosphere. | D. Ozone damage.                      |

2. Which of the following is NOT a reason for carbon dioxide?

- |                  |                       |
|------------------|-----------------------|
| A. Ozone damage. | B. Burning of forest. |
| C. Traffic.      | D. Industry.          |

3. According to the author which of the following is a reason why in winter there is more carbon-monoxide in the atmosphere?

- A. Fewer factories are working.
- B. There is a decrease in the amount of traffic on the roads.
- C. Central heating means there are fewer fires nowadays.
- D. Carbon monoxide is not absorbed so fast.

4. Why are the optimists happy?

- A. People are buying more cars.
- B. There is more carbon dioxide in the North.
- C. They are possibly burning fewer forests in the Southern Hemisphere.
- D. Industry must be doing better.

5. What is the attitude of the author towards the new findings?

- A. He is biased in favor of the South.
- B. He is neutral.
- C. He agrees with the optimists.
- D. He is worried about the North.

**VIII. Rewrite the following sentences using the words in the brackets**

1. Having been told about the dangers of chemical fertilisers, they turned to bio - fertilisers. (Because)

---

---

2. Having spent the whole day cleaning up my room, I needed to take a shower and have a rest. (Because)

---

---

3. Having finished all my homework, I watched my favourite film on TV. (After)

---

---

4. Having watched the documentary about wildlife, I made a donation to an environmental society. (After)

---

---

5. Having read the stories about people who reduced their carbon footprint, we started to change our daily consumption habits. (After)

---

---

6. Having eaten my evening meal, I decided to go for a walk. (After)

---

---

---

7. Having managed water resources irresponsibly, the authorities had to deal with water shortages in the region. (Since)

---

---

## Unit 7. FURTHER EDUCATION

### PART 1: VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR REVIEW

#### A. VOCABULARY

abroad	/ə'brɔ:d/	(adv)	ở nước ngoài
academic	/,ækə'demɪk/	(adj)	thuộc về hoặc liên quan đến giáo dục, việc học tập, mang tính học thuật
accommodation	/ə,kɒmə'deɪʃn/	(n)	tiện nghi ăn ở, chỗ ăn ở
achieve	/ə'tʃi:v/	(v)	đạt được
admission	/əd'mɪʃn/	(n)	sự vào hoặc được nhận vào một trường học
analytical	/,ænə'lɪtɪkl/	(adj)	(thuộc) phân tích
baccalaureate	/,bækə'lɔ:riət/	(n)	kì thi tú tài
bachelor	/'bætʃələ(r)/	(n)	người có bằng cử nhân
broaden	/'brɔ:dn/	(n)	mở rộng, nói rộng
campus	/'kæmpəs/	(n)	khu trường sở, sân bãi (của các trường trung học, đại học)
collaboration	/kə,læbə'reɪʃn/	(n)	cộng tác
college	/'kɒlɪdʒ/	(n)	trường cao đẳng hoặc trường chuyên nghiệp
consult	/kən'sʌlt/	(v)	hỏi ý kiến, tra cứu, tham khảo
coordinator	/kəʊ'ɔ:dmeɪtə(r)/	(n)	người điều phối, điều phối viên
course	/kɔ:s/	(n)	khóa học, chương trình học
critical	/'krɪtɪkl/	(adj)	thuộc bình phẩm, phê bình
CV	/,si:'vi:/	(n)	viết tắt của curriculum vitae, bản tóm tắt quá trình hoạt động của một người (thường nộp theo đơn xin việc); bản lí lịch
dean	/di:n/	(n)	chủ nhiệm khoa (một trường đại học)
degree	/di'ɡri:/	(n)	học vị, bằng cấp

diploma	/di'pləʊmə/	(n)	bằng cấp, văn bằng
doctorate	/'dɒktərət/	(n)	học vị tiến sĩ
eligible	/'elɪdʒəbl/	(adj)	đủ tư cách, thích hợp
enrol	/m'rəʊl/	(v)	ghi danh
enter	/'entə(r)/	(v)	gia nhập, theo học một trường
faculty	/'fæklti/	(n)	khoa (của một trường đại học)
institution	/'ɪnstɪ'tju:ʃn/	(n)	viện, trường đại học
internship	/'ɪntɜ:nʃɪp/	(n)	giai đoạn thực tập
kindergarten	/'kɪndəɡɑ:tn/	(n)	trường mẫu giáo ( cho trẻ 4 - 6 tuổi)
major	/'meɪdʒə(r)/	(n)	môn học chính của sinh viên, chuyên ngành
mandatory	/'mændətəri/	(a)	có tính bắt buộc
Master	/'mɑ:stə(r)/	(n)	thạc sĩ
passion	/'pæʃn/	(n)	sự say mê, niềm say mê
potential	/pə'tenʃl/	(n)	khả năng, tiềm lực
profession	/prə'feʃn/	(n)	ngành, nghề nghiệp
pursue	/pə'sju:ʃ/	(v)	đeo đuổi
qualification	/'kwɒlɪfi'keɪʃn/	(n)	văn bằng, học vị, chứng chỉ
scholarship	/'skɒləʃɪp/	(n)	học bổng
skill	/skɪl/	(n)	kỹ năng
talent	/'tælənt/	(n)	tài năng, năng lực, nhân tài
training	/'treɪnɪŋ/	(n)	rèn luyện, đào tạo
transcript	/'trænskɪpt/	(n)	học bạ, phiếu điểm
tuition	/'tju:ʃn/	(n)	tiền học, học phí
tutor	/'tju:tə(r)/	(n)	thầy giáo dạy kèm
undergraduate	/'ʌndə'grædʒuət/	(n)	sinh viên đang học đại học hoặc cao đẳng, chưa tốt nghiệp
university	/'ju:nɪ'vɜ:səti/	(n)	trường đại học
vocational	/'vəʊ'keɪʃnəl/	(adj)	thuộc về hoặc liên quan đến học nghề, hướng nghiệp

## B. GRAMMAR REVIEW

### 1. PRESENT PERFECT (Hiện tại hoàn thành)

#### a. Form (Cấu trúc):

(+) S + have/ has + Vp2/ ed + O

(-) S + have/ has + not + Vp2/ ed + O

(?) **Have/ has (not) + S + Vp2/ ed + O?**

**b. Uses (Cách sử dụng)**

**- Diễn tả 1 sự việc vừa mới xảy ra.**

Ex: I have just finished the financial report. (Tôi vừa hoàn thành xong bản báo cáo tài chính.)

**- Diễn tả 1 sự việc đã xảy ra trong quá khứ nhưng còn liên quan đến hiện tại.**

Ex: My husband has worked for this company for 2 years. (Chồng tôi đã làm cho công ty này được 2 năm - Nghĩa là: cách đây 2 năm đã bắt đầu làm, hiện tại vẫn có thể đang làm cho công ty này hoặc không)

**- Diễn tả 1 sự việc đã xảy ra ở một thời điểm không xác định trong quá khứ.**

Ex: She has been in China for a long time. (Đã có một thời gian dài cô ấy ở Trung Quốc.)

**- Nhấn mạnh đến trải nghiệm bản thân (the first/second/third/last... time), nhấn mạnh kết quả:**

Ex: + I have seen that film three times. (Tôi đã từng xem bộ phim này 3 lần)

+ This is the first time that he has been in the USA. (Đây là lần đầu tiên anh ấy đến Mỹ)

**c. Advs (Trạng ngữ nhận biết)**

- just, recently, lately: gần đây, vừa mới

- before : trước đây

- already: rồi

- ever: từng

- never: không bao giờ, chưa bao giờ

- yet: chưa

- since: kể từ khi

- for: khoảng

- so far = until now = up to now = up to the present: cho đến bây giờ

**d. Một số lưu ý đối với thì hiện tại hoàn thành**

**- Phân biệt “Since” và “For”:**

**since** + mốc thời gian

**for** + khoảng thời gian

Ex: - I've known Anna since October.

- I've known Anna for two months.

**- Phân biệt “yet” và “already”:**

**yet** : dùng trong câu phủ định và câu nghi vấn

**already** : dùng trong câu khẳng định

Ex: - He hasn't come yet.

- I've already posted the letters.

- Thường dùng “ever”, “never” với Hiện tại hoàn thành:

Ex: - He has never been there.

- Have you ever eaten snake meat?

**- Phân biệt “Have/ has been” khác với “have/ has gone”:**

Ex: (a) Mr. Smith is not here at the moment. He has gone to a meeting in London.

(b) Amada has been to the travel agent. She has your tickets for Hong Kong.

Trong 2 ví dụ trên, ví dụ (a) có thể hiểu là Mr. Smith vẫn đang ở buổi họp trong khi đó ở ví dụ (b) Amada đã đi đến đó và trở về rồi.

**- Một số lưu ý khác:**

✓ Trong các mệnh đề diễn tả sự so sánh hơn nhất, số thứ tự, sự duy nhất hay số lần thực hiện hành động

→ Động từ chia ở Hiện tại hoàn thành.

Ex: - This is the most interesting story I have heard.

- This is the only foreigner I have ever known.

**(1) It's the first / second / ... time + HTHT**

**(2) This is the first / second ... time + HTHT**

Ex: - It's the first time I have driven a car.

- This is the first time she has lived in New York.

✓ **Its + khoảng thời gian + since + sb last did sth:** Đó là khoảng thời gian kể từ khi ai đó làm gì.

Ex: I haven't seen her for 3 days. → It's 3 days since I last saw her.

## **2. PRESENT PERFECT CONTINUOUS (Hiện tại hoàn thành tiếp diễn)**

### **a. Form (Cấu trúc)**

**(+) S + have/ has + been + Ving**

**(-) S + have/ has + not + been + Ving**

**(?) Have/ Has (not) + S + been + Ving?**

**b. Uses (Cách sử dụng):** Diễn tả sự việc đã xảy ra trong quá khứ, kéo dài đến hiện tại và có thể tiếp tục xảy ra trong tương lai. (Nhấn mạnh tính liên tục của hành động)

Ex: I have been teaching English since I was a second-year student.

(Tôi đã dạy tiếng Anh kể từ khi tôi là sinh viên năm thứ 2, đã bắt đầu dạy trong quá khứ, hiện tại vẫn

đang tiếp tục dạy và có thể trong tương lai vẫn dạy)

### **c. Advs (Trạng ngữ nhận biết)**

- For + time + now, và giống các trạng ngữ của thì hiện tại hoàn thành (Thường sẽ có 1 vế giải thích ở hiện tại tiếp diễn)

## PART 2: EXERCISES

### A. PHONETICS

#### I. Find the word which has a different sound in the part underlined.

1. A. ago                      B. across                      C. about                      D. adult
2. A. language                      B. article                      C. partly                      D. hardly
3. A. but                      B. cut                      C. sun                      D. put
4. A. lake                      B. plane                      C. plan                      D. state
5. A. lecture                      B. medium                      C. inventor                      D. president

#### II. Choose the word which has a different stress pattern from the others.

1. A. definition                      B. politician                      C. situation                      D. production
2. A. image                      B. purchase                      C. mislead                      D. deadline
3. A. extinction                      B. endangered                      C. business                      D. intention
4. A. cattle                      B. country                      C. canal                      D. cover
5. A. copy                      B. remove                      C. notice                      D. cancel

### B. VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR

#### I. Put the verbs in the present perfect or the present perfect continuous tense.

1. I (try) \_\_\_\_\_ to learn French for years, but I (not succeed) \_\_\_\_\_ yet.
2. She (read) \_\_\_\_\_ all the works of Dickens. How many (you read) \_\_\_\_\_?
3. I (wait) \_\_\_\_\_ here nearly half an hour for my girlfriend; do you think she (forget) \_\_\_\_\_ to come?
4. Mary (rest) \_\_\_\_\_ in the garden all day because she (be) \_\_\_\_\_ ill.
5. Although John (study) \_\_\_\_\_ at the University for 5 years, he (not get) \_\_\_\_\_ his degree yet.
6. Jack (go) \_\_\_\_\_ to Switzerland for a holiday. He (never, be) \_\_\_\_\_ there.
7. We (live) \_\_\_\_\_ here for the last six months, and (just, decide) \_\_\_\_\_

to move.

8. That book (lie) \_\_\_\_\_ on the table for weeks. You (not read)

\_\_\_\_\_ it yet?

9. He (not be) \_\_\_\_\_ here since Christmas; I wonder where he (live) \_\_\_\_\_ since then.

10. He (lose) \_\_\_\_\_ his books. He (look) \_\_\_\_\_ for them all afternoon, but they (not turn up) \_\_\_\_\_ yet.

11. She (work) \_\_\_\_\_ so hard this week that she (not have) \_\_\_\_\_ time to go to the cinema.

12. Your hair is wet. (You swim) \_\_\_\_\_ for a long time?

13. Bill is still a bad driver although he (drive) \_\_\_\_\_ cars for six years.

14. You look very tired. (You work) \_\_\_\_\_ very hard ?

15. The phone (ring) \_\_\_\_\_ for 2 minutes, but I (not answer) \_\_\_\_\_ it yet.

## II. Put the correct preposition for the sentences below.

1. Academic courses should teach practical skills \_\_\_\_\_ addition to critical thinking.

2. When a student enters a college or university, he/she has to choose a main subject \_\_\_\_\_ study, which is called major.

3. Specialized vocational courses such \_\_\_\_\_ design and cooking are very popular.

4. Students \_\_\_\_\_ bachelor's degrees can pursue postgraduate education to get master's or doctoral degrees.

5. It's difficult \_\_\_\_\_ find a place to park in the city centre.

6. Although Kevin did not have any academic qualifications, he had a lot \_\_\_\_\_ practical experience.

7. We have just attended a seminar \_\_\_\_\_ further education.

8. Students can choose to pursue further education which is generally divided \_\_\_\_\_ higher education and vocational education and training.

9. I started the course two weeks ago, but I have already passed most \_\_\_\_\_ the tests.

10. The academic year has just started and I have been living \_\_\_\_\_ the halls of residence so far.



**III. Choose the correct words in brackets to complete the sentences.**

1. Prof. Wilson *has given / has been giving* the same seminar to students for the last 12 years.
2. She *has never understood / has never been understanding* why so many young people want to study abroad.
3. Nam *has studied / has been studying* English for two years.
4. He *has attended / has been attending* online vocational courses twice.
5. *Have you applied / Have you applying* for the scholarship to study in Singapore?
6. We *have waited / have been waiting* for the university's reply about entry requirements for the whole week. We hope to receive it soon.
7. The British Council *has used / has been using* IELTS as an international standardised test of English for non-native English language speakers for a long time.
8. The university *has built / has been building* a new campus since May.
9. We *have read / have been reading* three books on vocational training to complete this project.
10. They *have read / have been reading* a report on a further education since last Monday. I will finish it this Sunday.
11. Mary *has stayed / has been staying* at a homestay for three weeks during her undergraduate programme.
12. I *have applied / have been applying* for a vocational scholarship three times.

**IV. Use the word given in capitals at the end of each line to form the word that fits in the gap in the same line.**

1. Can you explain what types of \_\_\_\_\_ are available for international students?  
(FUND)
2. Are \_\_\_\_\_ students allowed to work part-time? (NATIONAL)
3. I'd like to consult you about the \_\_\_\_\_ differences (that) I should be aware of.  
(CULTURE)
4. What \_\_\_\_\_ me most is the high cost of living in London as an international student. (WORRY)
5. One of the reasons for Vietnamese students' studying abroad is the quality of the \_\_\_\_\_ programmes in higher education. (ACADEMY)
6. Most of these students are interested in pursuing \_\_\_\_\_ studies for bachelor's degrees. (GRADUATE)
7. Some students decide to study in the United States or the United Kingdom to improve their language \_\_\_\_\_, which can help them to get a better job. SKILLFUL

8. Some universities in the United States offer different \_\_\_\_\_ to international students to help to cover tuition fees and living costs. (SCHOOL)

9. The higher education \_\_\_\_\_ gained at UK universities and colleges are recognised worldwide. (QUALIFY)

10. Universities must better prepare students for their \_\_\_\_\_ careers. (PROFESSION)

**V. Choose the best answer A, B, C or D to complete the sentences.**

1. We \_\_\_\_\_ him since he \_\_\_\_\_ married.

- A. didn't see/got      B. haven't seen/got      C. don't/get      D. hadn't seen/got

2. I \_\_\_\_\_ the money yet.

- A. not received      B. didn't receive      C. haven't received      D. hadn't received

3. Today is Thursday and she \_\_\_\_\_ late twice this week. She \_\_\_\_\_ late yesterday and on Monday.

- A. is/was      B. has been/is      C. has been/was      D. has been/had been

4. We \_\_\_\_\_ what to do with the money yet.

- A. not decide      B. didn't decide      C. haven't decided      D. hadn't decided

5. My father \_\_\_\_\_ as a teacher for almost thirty years.

- A. works      B. is working      C. worked      D. has been working

6. He \_\_\_\_\_ to New York at least three times this year.

- A. had been going      B. was going      C. has been going      D. is going

7. They \_\_\_\_\_ to know each other for more than ten years.

- A. get      B. got      C. have got      D. had got

8. She \_\_\_\_\_ dishes already.

- A. was washing      B. washed      C. has washed      D. has been washing

9. I \_\_\_\_\_ you for ages.

- A. haven't been meeting      B. didn't meet      C. wasn't meeting      D. haven't met

10. Tom is still watching television. He \_\_\_\_\_ television all day.

- A. has been watching      B. was watching      C. has watched      D. watched

11. A Bachelor's degree is a three-year or four-year course you take in undergraduate higher education after you \_\_\_\_\_ further education.

- A. has finished      B. had been finishing      C. have finished      D. have been finishing

12. At most institutions in the UK, the \_\_\_\_\_ starts in September or October and runs until June or July.

- A. leap year      B. gap year      C. new year      D. academic year

13. That university \_\_\_\_ the Advanced Programme with the aim to enrol around 500 international students for a decade.
- A. has been implementing                      B. will be implementing  
C. have implemented                              D. will implement
14. Further and higher education colleges offer courses and qualification wide range of vocational and academic subjects at many \_\_\_\_.
- A. levels                      B. positions                      C. standards                      D. qualities
15. Depending on your nationality, you may be \_\_\_\_ for a loan or financial support from the UK government.
- A. keen                      B. eligible                      C. legal                      D. capable
16. The UK offers a wide range of work-based \_\_\_\_ for students seeking to build careers in specific industries.
- A. exercising                      B. practicing                      C. learning                      D. training
17. University \_\_\_\_ in Vietnam can decide their own criteria for enrolling international students.
- A. bosses                      B. leaders                      C. principals                      D. rectors
18. A Bachelor's degree is also known as the \_\_\_\_ university degree or an undergraduate degree.
- A. main                      B. ordinary                      C. first                      D. major
19. The teachers at Edinburgh College encourage students to \_\_\_\_ with others, experiment with arts and find their own ideas.
- A. solve                      B. collaborate                      C. support                      D. improve
20. With thousands of UK further education courses on offer, you can choose a course that \_\_\_\_ your goals and interests.
- A. watches                      B. appoints                      C. fixes                      D. matches

## C. READING

### I. Fill the blank with a suitable word.

In the USA, further education generally refers to education undertaken by adults of all ages after leaving full-time study. It doesn't include degree courses (1) \_\_\_\_\_ at college or university directly after leaving high school, which come under (2) \_\_\_\_\_ education.

Further education includes everything from basic reading and writing skills for the illiterate to full-time professional and doctorate degrees at university. On many university (3) \_\_\_\_\_, more students are enrolled in further education courses than in (4) \_\_\_\_\_ degree programmes.

Often adult education students don't need to be high school or degree graduates or take any tests or interviews, and they're generally (5) \_\_\_\_\_ on a first-come, first served basis. A high school

diploma is (6) \_\_\_\_\_ for some courses, although General Educational Development (GED) tests allow students to (7) \_\_\_\_\_ a high school equivalency diploma.

Adult education courses may be full-time or part-time and are provided by two and four-year colleges, universities, community colleges, (8) \_\_\_\_\_ schools, and elementary and high schools. Courses are also provided by private community organizations, government (9) \_\_\_\_\_, and job training centres. More and more adult education programmes are becoming (10) \_\_\_\_\_ on the Internet, including courses which offer university or continuing education credits for completion.

**II. Fill each of the numbered blanks in the following passage. Use only one word in each space.**

*leading      straight      long      fields      education*  
*higher      offers      persuade      skilled      qualifications*

Further education in Britain means (1) \_\_\_\_\_ after GCSE exams taken around the age of 16. It includes courses of study (2) \_\_\_\_\_ to A-levels which students do at their school or college. Some students go (3) \_\_\_\_\_ to a college of further education which (4) \_\_\_\_\_ a wide range of full or part-time courses. Further education also includes training for professional (5) \_\_\_\_\_ in nursing, accountancy, and management and in (6) \_\_\_\_\_ such as arts and music. The term (7) \_\_\_\_\_ education is used to refer to degree courses at universities.

The British government is keen on (8) \_\_\_\_\_ more young people to remain in education as (9) \_\_\_\_\_ as possible in order to build up a more highly (10) \_\_\_\_\_, better educated workforce.

**III. Choose the word or phrase among A, B, C or D that best fits the blank in the following passage.**

British further education qualifications are respected by employers and (1) \_\_\_\_\_ worldwide. There are two main types: academic courses, and vocational and professional courses. Academic courses help you (2) \_\_\_\_\_ for higher education at a university or college. They aim to develop your analytical skills, critical thinking and knowledge. (3) \_\_\_\_\_ and professional courses give you the skills and qualification you need to enter and succeed in your chosen career. They offer technical (4) \_\_\_\_\_ and skills for the workplace. British (5) \_\_\_\_\_ education providers invest heavily in facilities - from libraries, computer centres and science laboratories to sports centres, theatres and arts studios. Class sizes are (6) \_\_\_\_\_ to ensure that you have access to equipment and enough time to talk to your tutors and lectures.

British qualifications are a great boost to your CV and to your earnings. Employers are increasingly looking for (7) \_\_\_\_\_ with multicultural experience. Moreover, British colleges and universities have strong links with industry - many courses are designed in partnership with, and taught by, industry professional. Many include the option of a year in industry or a work placement, giving you real professional (8) \_\_\_\_\_.

English is widely regarded as the language of business. Studying in the UK helps you learn language quickly, through your studies, friends and everyday life. If you need any additional support, (9) \_\_\_\_ are lots of English language classes across the UK.

The UK is a truly multicultural society, with a wonderful mix of people from many different backgrounds. As a student, you'll get to know people from all over the world and be inspired by many cultures. Many colleges have international offices and advisers to ensure you feel welcome and are supported (10) \_\_\_\_ your time in British further education.

1. A. academics      B. academy      C. academical      D. academically
2. A. get      B. prepare      C. make      D. support
3. A. Occasional      B. Vocational      C. Optional      D. Various
4. A. growing      B. changing      C. adding      D. training
5. A. further      B. each      C. both      D. every
6. A. bored      B. restricted      C. expensive      D. attracted
7. A. joins      B. enters      C. arrives      D. graduates
8. A. experiment      B. factor      C. experience      D. problem
9. A. there      B. that      C. which      D. they
10. A. in      B. over      C. throughout      D. cross

#### IV. Read the passage and choose the best answer.

It's called 42 - the name taken from the answer to the meaning of life, from the science fiction series *The Hitchhiker's Guide to the Galaxy*. 42 was founded by French technology billionaire Xavier Niel, whose backing means there are no tuition fees and accommodation is free. Mr Niel and his co-founders come from the world of technology and start-ups, and they are trying to do to education what Facebook did to communication and Airbus to accommodation.

Students at 42 are given a choice of projects that they might be set in a job as a software engineer - perhaps **to design a website or a computer game**. They complete a project using resources freely available on the Internet and by seeking help from their fellow students, who work alongside **them** in a large open-plan room full of computers. Another student will then be randomly assigned to mark their work.

The founders claim this method of learning makes up for shortcomings in the traditional education system, which they say encourages students to be passive recipients of knowledge. "Peer-to-peer learning develops students with the confidence to search for solutions by themselves, often in quite creative and ingenious ways."

Like in computer games, the students are asked to design and they go up a level by completing a project. They graduate when they reach level 21, which usually takes three to five years. And at the end,

there is a certificate but no formal degree. Recent graduates are now working at companies including IBM, Amazon, and Tesla, as well as starting their own firms.

"The feedback we have had from employers is that our graduates are more apt to go off and find out information for themselves, rather than asking their supervisors what to do next," says Brittany Bir, chief operating officer of 42 in California and a graduate of its sister school in Paris. Ms Bir says 42's graduates will be better able to work with others and discuss and defend their ideas - an important skill in the "real world" of work. "This is particularly important in computer programming, where individuals are **notorious** for lacking certain human skills," she says.

But could 42's model of teacherless learning work in mainstream universities? Brittany Bir admits 42's methods do not suit all students. "It suits individuals who are very disciplined and self-motivated, and who are not scared by having the freedom to work at their own pace," she says.

*Question 1:* According to the passage, 42 is \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. a kind of school
- B. a type of accommodation
- C. an innovation in technology
- D. a tool of virtual communication

*Question 2:* The word "**them**" in paragraph 2 refers to \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. students at 42
- B. projects
- C. resources
- D. software engineers

*Question 3:* The author mentions "**to design a website or a computer game**" in paragraph 2 to illustrate \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. a job that a French software engineer always does
- B. a choice of assignment that students at 42 have to complete
- C. a free resource available on the Internet
- D. a help that students at 42 get for their work

*Question 4:* What do 42's graduates receive on completion of their course?

- A. a certificate
- B. a degree
- C. a project
- D. a design

*Question 5:* Which of the following is TRUE according to the passage?

- A. The founders of 42 share the idea of providing free service on Facebook.
- B. It normally takes 42's students at least five years to complete their course.
- C. The students of 42 are required to play computer games during their course.
- D. 42's peer-to-peer approach promotes active learning and working.

*Question 6:* According to Ms Bir, 42's graduates will be able to improve \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. the skills of giving feedback
- B. the skills of searching for information
- C. the skills of teamwork and debating
- D. the skills of software programming

*Question 7:* The word "**notorious**" in paragraph 5 can be best replaced by \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. respectable      B. incompetent      C. infamous      D. memorable

Question 8: It can be inferred from the passage that \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. 42 is a good choice for people of all ages and nationalities  
B. all 42's graduates are employed by world leading technology companies  
C. 42's students have to handle the task assigned without any assistance  
D. 42 adopts project-based and problem-solving learning methods

#### D. WRITING

##### I. Rewrite the sentences, using the present perfect or the present perfect continuous.

1. I started discussing my research proposal with my professor at the beginning of my course. We're still discussing it.

→

---

—

2. Nam's still studying English. He started studying it two years ago. (for)

→

---

—

3. I started learning how to play the piano eight months ago. I'm still learning it.

→

---

—

4. He attended two online vocational courses: one in 2012 and the other in 2013. (twice)

→

---

—

5. They visited this college in 2009, 2012 and 2014. (three times)

→

---

—

6. The British Council established IELTS a long time ago. It still uses this test as an international standardised test of English for non- native English language speakers. (for)

→

---

—

---

–

7. She started her research project last month. She's still doing it.

→

---

–

8. The university started building a new campus in May. They are still building it. (since)

→

---

–

9. The graduate students started arriving at four o'clock. They are all in the lecture hall.

→

---

–

10. Mary is staying at a homestay during her undergraduate programme. The programme began three weeks ago. (for)

→

---

–

---

–

### PART 3: TEST YOURSELF

#### I. Find the word which has a different sound in the part underlined.

- |                        |                         |                     |                          |
|------------------------|-------------------------|---------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. A. <u>b</u> usiness | B. <u>b</u> ustle       | C. <u>h</u> undred  | D. <u>n</u> umber        |
| 2. A. <u>m</u> odern   | B. <u>m</u> other       | C. <u>o</u> pera    | D. <u>h</u> obby         |
| 3. A. <u>f</u> unction | B. <u>a</u> ssimilation | C. <u>q</u> uestion | D. <u>c</u> ommunication |
| 4. A. <u>t</u> housand | B. <u>T</u> hailand     | C. <u>t</u> heatre  | D. <u>t</u> hink         |
| 5. A. <u>F</u> rench   | B. <u>s</u> chool       | C. <u>m</u> echanic | D. <u>c</u> hemistry     |

#### II. Choose the word which has a different stress pattern from the others.

- |                  |              |              |               |
|------------------|--------------|--------------|---------------|
| 1. A. extinction | B. furniture | C. applicant | D. wilderness |
| 2. A. bamboo     | B. offer     | C. student   | D. minute     |
| 3. A. facility   | B. minority  | C. necessary | D. priority   |



4. A. apply                      B. differ                      C. decide                      D. protect  
5. A. charity                      B. accurate                      C. erosion                      D. dangerous

**III. Choose the best answer A, B, C or D to complete the sentences.**

1. I'm very hungry. I \_\_\_\_ all day.  
A. didn't eat                      B. haven't ate                      C. haven't eaten                      D. have been eating
2. Their new kitchen looks fantastic. They \_\_\_\_ completely \_\_\_\_ it.  
A. have /been redecorating                      B. have/redecorated  
C. already /redecorated                      D. didn't/redecorated
3. Our kitchen's a mess. We \_\_\_\_ any cleaning for weeks.  
A. didn't do                      B. haven't been doing                      C. have done                      D. haven't done
4. I think they are dating. They \_\_\_\_ each other a lot recently.  
A. had seen                      B. haven't been seeing                      C. have been seeing                      D. have seen
5. We've discovered in this great café and we \_\_\_\_ there a lot.  
A. have been going                      B. have gone                      C. are going                      D. have went
6. How's your Mum? I \_\_\_\_ her for ages.  
A. had seen                      B. haven't seen                      C. haven't been seeing                      D. didn't see
7. You're covered in paint! What \_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_?  
A. have / done                      B. were / doing                      C. did / do                      D. have / been doing
8. She's gone to the doctor's. She \_\_\_\_ well lately.  
A. hasn't felt                      B. hasn't been feeling                      C. has felt                      D. doesn't feel
9. I \_\_\_\_ for ages now.  
A. have waited                      B. waited                      C. was waiting                      D. have been waiting
10. I have to write an essay. I \_\_\_\_ about half of it so far.  
A. have written                      B. have been writing                      C. wrote                      D. have to write
11. As well as studying on \_\_\_\_ in the UK, you can also choose to study outside the UK - for example by distance learning.  
A. department                      B. dormitory                      C. campus                      D. accommodation
12. You can choose to study online or on \_\_\_\_, in the UK or even at an overseas site.  
A. the move                      B. campus                      C. the ground                      D. board
13. IB students can select subjects so that they specialise in a particular academic field, but mathematics, native language and theory of knowledge are \_\_\_\_ subjects.  
A. compulsory                      B. certain                      C. optional                      D. elective
14. In England, most students in further education are adults \_\_\_\_ on part time programmes.

A. joined                      B. joining                      C. enrolled                      D. enrolling

15. In some institutions, A-levels can also be awarded in combination with other \_\_\_\_, such as International Baccalaureate certificates.

A. courses                      B. levels                      C. examinations                      D. qualifications

16. Vietnam National University - Ho Chi Minh City \_\_\_\_ around 30 undergraduate courses in English since 2000.

A. have been setting up                      B. have been set up  
C. has set up                      D. has been setting up

17. The International Baccalaureate is also now offered by more schools in the UK as a(n) \_\_\_\_ to A-levels.

A. alternative                      B. option                      C. choice                      D. substitution

18. Vietnam National University - Ha Noi, the country's largest \_\_\_\_, has been carrying out a similar project since 2008, setting up six undergraduate, three masters and a PhD programme taught in English.

A. school                      B. faculty                      C. institute                      D. institution

19. Further education courses are usually described as either \_\_\_\_ or vocational.

A. major                      B. partial                      C. academic                      D. practical

20. Academic \_\_\_\_ are official copies of your academic work.

A. transcripts                      B. reminds                      C. accounts                      D. statements

#### IV. Find and correct the mistakes.

1. How long has you been living here?
2. I has been living here for 2 years.
3. Have they working in this company since 1990?
4. She has been cried all day long.
5. I have waiting for my turn for 20 minutes.
6. She have been cleaning her house for 4 hours.
7. I'm tired because I worked very hard.
8. He has write his letter all the morning.
9. Jane is getting fatter because she has eating too much.
10. My mother has peeling potatoes all the morning.

#### V. Fill in the blank with a suitable word.

Like any other universities, the Open University can give you a degree. However, you don't have to (1) \_\_\_\_\_ working to study. It can also open up a whole variety (2) \_\_\_\_\_ interest. If you have (3) \_\_\_\_\_ studied before, you will enjoy the special, new pleasure of (4)

\_\_\_\_\_ your knowledge. You will make friends of (5) \_\_\_\_\_ kinds. You may also (6) \_\_\_\_\_ that your qualification provides new career opportunities.

You don't actually (7) \_\_\_\_\_ to the Open University for lectures, but study at home, using television, radio and computer software. You can (8) \_\_\_\_\_ one class a month if you wish at an Open University centre. Of course, there are exams to take, as in (9) \_\_\_\_\_ university. If you (10) \_\_\_\_\_ like to know more, all you have to do is complete the form below. It could be the start of a wonderful new period in your life.

**VI. Choose the word in the box to complete the text.**

<i>professional</i>	<i>instructions</i>	<i>separation</i>	<i>distant</i>
<i>subject</i>	<i>individual</i>	<i>systems</i>	<i>courses</i>

Distant education is a rapidly developing approach to (1) \_\_\_\_\_ throughout the business. The approach has been widely used by business, industrial, and medical organizations. For many years, doctors, veterinarians, pharmacists, engineers, and lawyers have used it to continue their (2) \_\_\_\_\_ education. Recently, academic instructions have been using (3) \_\_\_\_\_ education to reach a more diverse and geographically disperse audience not accessible through traditional classroom instructions.

The distinguishing characteristics of distant education is the (4) \_\_\_\_\_ of the instructor and students during the learning process. The communication of the (5) \_\_\_\_\_ matter is primarily to individuals rather than groups. As a consequence, the course content must be delivered by instructional media.

The media may be primarily printed, as in the case of traditional correspondence course. Audiocassettes, videotapes, videodiscs, computer-based instructions, and interactive video (6) \_\_\_\_\_ can be sent to (7) \_\_\_\_\_ students. In addition, radio, broadcast television, telelectures, and teleconferences are utilized for "live" distant education. The latter two delivery (8) \_\_\_\_\_ allow for interactive instructions between the instructor and students.

**VII. Choose the word or phrase among A, B, C or D that best fits the blank space in the following passage.**

If you (1) \_\_\_\_\_ to go to a university, you usually apply during your last year at school, when you are 17-18. You can apply to (2) \_\_\_\_\_ at any university in Britain and most people choose a university that is not in their own town. So, university students usually live away from home. Students get a grant from the government to study. At the beginning of your last year at school, you (3) \_\_\_\_\_ an application form. On this form you choose up to five universities that you would like to go to. The form is sent to those universities with (4) \_\_\_\_\_ from your school about your academic (5) \_\_\_\_\_. If the universities are interested in your application, they will offer you a place.

Any offer, however, is only conditional at this stage. Applications and interviews take (6) \_\_\_\_\_ several months before students do their A-level examinations. These are the exams that you do at the end of your time at school. So, when a university makes an (7) \_\_\_\_\_, it will tell you the minimum grades that you will have to get when you do your A-level exams. If you don't obtain those grades, then, you will not be able to (8) \_\_\_\_\_ the place. It will be offered to someone else and you must apply (9) \_\_\_\_\_ to another university. You don't have to accept your place immediately. Some students don't want to straight from school to university. (10) \_\_\_\_\_, after they have taken their A-level, they take a year out to work or travel.

- |               |                |                |                |
|---------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|
| 1. A. want    | B. make        | C. perform     | D. participate |
| 2. A. lead    | B. link        | C. study       | D. lock        |
| 3. A. reply   | B. ban         | C. receive     | D. forward     |
| 4. A. problem | B. information | C. support     | D. present     |
| 5. A. degree  | B. diploma     | C. certificate | D. record      |
| 6. A. out     | B. place       | C. in          | D. after       |
| 7. A. attempt | B. offer       | C. secondary   | D. main        |
| 8. A. get     | B. make        | C. remind      | D. inquire     |
| 9. A. soon    | B. again       | C. against     | D. much        |
| 10. A. So     | B. But         | C. Because     | D. Then        |

**VIII. Read a text about common wedding rituals in the USA and answer the questions that follow.**

The system of higher education had its origin in Europe in the Middle Ages, when the first universities were established. In modern times, the nature of higher education around the world, to some extent, has been determined by the models of influential countries such as France and Germany.

Both France and Germany have systems of higher education that are basically administered by state agencies. Entrance requirements for students are also similar in both countries. In France, an examination called the *baccalauréat* is given at the end of secondary education. Higher education in France is free and open to all students who have passed this *baccalauréat*. Success in this examination allows students to continue their higher education for another three or four years until they have attained the first university degree called a *licence* in France.

Basic differences, however, distinguish these two countries' systems. French educational districts, called *académies*, are under the direction of a rector, an appointee of the national government who is also in charge of universities in each district. The **uniformity** in curriculum throughout the country leaves each university with little to distinguish itself. Hence, many students prefer to go to Paris, where there are better accommodations and more cultural amenities for them. Another difference is the existence in France of prestigious higher educational institutions known as *grandes écoles*, which provide advanced professional and technical training. Most of these schools are not affiliated with the universities, although they too

recruit **their** students by giving competitive examinations to candidates. The *grandes écoles* provide rigorous training in all branches of applied science and technology, and their diplomas have a somewhat higher standing than the ordinary *licence*.

In Germany, the regional universities have autonomy in determining their curriculum under the direction of rectors elected from within. Students in Germany change universities according to their interests and the strengths of each university. In fact, it is a custom for students to attend two, three, or even four different universities in the course of their undergraduate studies, and the majority of professors at a particular university may have taught in four or five others. This high degree mobility means that schemes of study and examination are marked by a freedom and individuality unknown in France.

France and Germany have greatly influenced higher education systems 20cd the world. The French, either through colonial influence or the work of missionaries, introduced many aspects of their system in other countries. The German the first to stress the importance of universities as research facilities, and they also created a sense of them as **emblems** of a national mind.

*Question 1.* What does the passage mainly discuss?

- A. The nature of education around the world in modern times
- B. Systems of higher education in France and Germany
- C. The origin of higher education system in Europe
- D. The influence of France and Germany on educational systems of other countries

*Question 2.* The word "**uniformity**" in paragraph 3 is closest in meaning to \_\_\_\_.

- A. proximity
- B. discrepancy
- C. similarity
- D. uniqueness

*Question 3.* The word "**their**" in paragraph 3 refers to \_\_\_\_.

- A. schools
- B. universities
- C. examinations
- D. branches

*Question 4.* Which of the following about *grandes écoles* in France is NOT stated in paragraph 3?

- A. Most of them have no connection with universities.
- B. They have a reputation for advanced professional and technical training.
- C. Their degrees are better recognized than those provided by universities.
- D. They offer better accommodations and facilities than universities.

*Question 5.* According to the passage, a regional university rector in Germany is elected by \_\_\_\_.

- A. the staff of the university
- B. the national government officials
- C. the regional government officials
- D. the staff of other universities

*Question 6.* According to paragraph 4, what makes it possible for students in Germany to attend different universities during their undergraduate studies?

- A. The university staff have become far more mobile and occupied.

- B. The university's training programs offer greater flexibility and freedom of choice.
- C. University tuition fees are kept at an affordable level for all students.
- D. Entry requirements to universities in Germany are made less demanding.

*Question 7.* The word “**emblems**” in the final paragraph is closest in meaning to

- A. representatives
- B. directions
- C. structures
- D. delegates

*Question 8.* Which of the following can be inferred from the passage?

- A. Studying in France and Germany is a good choice for people of all ages and nationalities.
- B. It normally takes longer to complete a university course in France than in Germany.
- C. Universities in Germany can govern themselves more effectively than those in France.
- D. The level of decentralization of higher education is greater in Germany than in France.

## Unit 8. OUR WORLD HERITAGE SITES

### PART 1: VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR REVIEW

#### A. VOCABULARY

abundant	/ə'bʌndənt/	(adj)	dồi dào, nhiều
acknowledge	/ək'nɒlɪdʒ/	(v)	chấp nhận, công nhận, thừa nhận
archaeological	/,ɑ:kiə'lədʒɪkl/	(adj)	thuộc về khảo cổ học
authentic	/ɔ:'θentɪk/	(adj)	thật, thực
breathtaking	/'breɪtʰeɪkɪŋ/	(adj)	đẹp đến ngỡ ngàng
bury	/'beri/	(v)	chôn vùi, giấu trong lòng đất
cave	/keɪv/	(n)	hang động
citadel	/'sɪtədəl/	(n)	thành trì (để bảo vệ khỏi bị tấn công)
complex	/'kɒmpleks/	(n)	quần thể, tổ hợp
comprise	/kəm'praɪz/	(v)	bao gồm, gồm
craftsman	/'kra:ftsmən/	(n)	thợ thủ công
cruise	/kru:z/	(n)	chuyến du ngoạn trên biển
cuisine	/kwi'zi:n/	(n)	cách thức chế biến thức ăn, nấu nướng
decorate	/'dekəreɪt/	(v)	trang trí
demolish	/dɪ'mɒlɪʃ/	(v)	đổ sập, đánh sập
distinctive	/dɪ'stɪŋktɪv/	(adj)	nổi bật, rõ rệt, đặc trưng
dome	/dəʊm/	(n)	mái vòm
dynasty	/'dɪnəsti/	(n)	triều đại

emerge	/i'mɜːdʒ/	(v)	trồi lên, nổi lên
emperor	/'empərə(r)/	(n)	đế vương, nhà vua
endow	/ɪn'daʊ/	(v)	ban tặng
excavation	/,ɛkskə'veɪʃn/	(n)	việc khai quật
expand	/ɪk'spænd/	(v)	mở rộng
fauna	/'fɔːnə/	(n)	hệ động vật
flora	/'flɔːrə/	(n)	hệ thực vật
geological	/,dʒiːə'lɒdʒɪkl/	(a)	thuộc về địa chất
grotto	/'grɒtəʊ/	(n)	hang động
harmonious	/hɑː'məʊniəs/	(a)	hài hòa
heritage	/'herɪtɪdʒ/	(n)	di sản
imperial	/ɪm'piəriəl/	(a)	thuộc về hoàng tộc
in ruins	/ɪn 'ruːɪn/	(idiom)	bị phá hủy, đổ nát
intact	/ɪn'tækt/	(a)	nguyên vẹn, không bị hư tổn
irresponsible	/,ɪrɪ'spɒnsəbl/	(a)	thiếu trách nhiệm, vô trách nhiệm
islet	/'aɪlət/	(n)	hòn đảo nhỏ
itinerary	/aɪ'tɪnərəri/	(n)	lịch trình cho chuyến đi
landscape	/'lændskeɪp/	(n)	phong cảnh ( thiên nhiên)
lantern	/'læntən/	(n)	đèn lồng
limestone	/'laɪmstəʊn/	(n)	đá vôi
magnificent	/mæg'nɪfɪsnt/	(a)	tuyệt đẹp
masterpiece	/'mɑːstəpiːs/	(n)	kiệt tác
mausoleum	/,mɔːsə'liːəm/	(n)	lăng mộ
mosaic	/məʊ'zeɪk/	(adj)	khảm, chạm khảm
mosque	/mɒsk/	(n)	nhà thờ Hồi giáo
outstanding	/aʊt'stændɪŋ/	(adj)	nổi bật, xuất chúng
picturesque	/,pɪktʃə'resk/	(adj)	đẹp, gây ấn tượng mạnh
poetic	/pəʊ'etɪk/	(adj)	mang tính chất thơ ca
preserve	/prɪ'zɜːv/	(v)	bảo tồn
preservation	/,prezə'veɪʃn/	(n)	việc bảo tồn
relic	/'reɪlɪk/	(n)	cổ vật
respectively	/'rɪ'spektɪvli/	(adv)	theo thứ tự lần lượt

royal	/'rɔɪəl/	(adj)	thuộc về nhà vua, hoàng gia
sanctuary	/'sæŋktʃuəri/	(n)	thánh địa, địa điểm thần thánh
scenic	/'si:nɪk/	(adj)	có cảnh quan đẹp
subsequent	/'sʌbsɪkwənt/	(adj)	tiếp theo, kế tiếp
tomb	/tu:m/	(n)	lăng mộ
worship	/'wɜ:ʃɪp/	(n)	thờ cúng, tôn thờ

## B. GRAMMAR REVIEW

### I. PARTICIPLE AND TO - INFINITIVE CLAUSES

**1. Chúng ta cũng có thể dùng một quá khứ phân từ để thay thế cho một mệnh đề quan hệ mà động từ chia ở thể bị động.**

- Ex: a. They live in a house that was built in 1890.  
→ They live in a house **built** in 1890.
- b. The ideas which are presented in that book are interesting.  
→ The ideas **presented** in that book are interesting.
- c. The ancient houses which were destroyed by the fire are now under reconstruction.  
→ The ancient houses **destroyed** by the fire are now under reconstruction.

**2. Hiện tại phân từ được dùng khi động từ trong mệnh đề quan hệ ở thì tiếp diễn, hoặc diễn tả một thói quen hay một điều ước.**

- Ex: a. The boy who is playing the piano is Ben.  
→ The boy **playing** the piano is Ben.
- b. We have a house which overlooks the park.  
→ We have a house **overlooking** the park.
- c. The man who spoke to John is my brother.  
→ The man **speaking** to John is my brother.

**3. Động từ nguyên thể có “to” được sử dụng sau: the first, the second, etc, the next, the last, the only và đôi khi dùng sau cấp so sánh cao nhất như the most famous, the oldest.**

- Ex: a. Yuri Gagarin was the first man who flew into space.  
→ Yuri Gagarin was the first man **to fly** into space.
- b. The last person who leaves the room must turn off the light.  
→ The last person **to leave** the room must turn off the light.

## PART 2: EXERCISES

### A. PHONETICS

**I. Find the word which has a different sound in the part underlined.**



- |                                |                            |                               |                                   |
|--------------------------------|----------------------------|-------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1. A. <u>g</u> overnment       | B. borro <u>w</u> ing      | C. <u>p</u> rogram            | D. <u>p</u> romot <u>io</u> n     |
| 2. A. poss <u>e</u> ssion      | B. <u>a</u> ccess          | C. <u>p</u> rop <u>e</u> rty  | D. <u>A</u> mer <u>i</u> can      |
| 3. A. <u>l</u> anguage         | B. <u>W</u> ales           | C. <u>A</u> ustr <u>a</u> lia | D. <u>p</u> ronunci <u>at</u> ion |
| 4. A. <u>p</u> rint            | B. <u>I</u> nd <u>i</u> an | C. <u>C</u> h <u>i</u> na     | D. <u>m</u> ing <u>l</u> ing      |
| 5. A. <u>E</u> ng <u>l</u> ish | B. <u>F</u> ren <u>c</u> h | C. <u>A</u> mer <u>i</u> can  | D. <u>W</u> est <u>A</u> frica    |

**II. Choose the word which has a different stress pattern from the others.**

- |                 |                |                |                |
|-----------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|
| 1. A. beautiful | B. terrific    | C. wonderful   | D. marvelous   |
| 2. A. conical   | B. different   | C. symbolic    | D. careful     |
| 3. A. cultural  | B. mischievous | C. interesting | D. responsible |
| 4. A. finance   | B. service     | C. order       | D. company     |
| 5. A. interview | B. agency      | C. addition    | D. customer    |

**B. VOCABUALRY AND GRAMMAR**

**I. Choose the correct words in brackets to complete the sentences.**

- If you buy stolen relics, you will help to create a black market, **to lead / leading** to further destruction of the heritage site.
- The final thing **to remember / remembering** is to admire the corals from a distance and not to break off any pieces to take home as souvenirs.
- The tour guide **taking / to take** us to Ha Long Bay can speak three languages.
- At the end of this corridor there is a gate **leading / leaded** to the main door of the temple.
- The Taj Mahal complex, **recognized / recognizing** as a World Heritage Site in 1983, includes the tomb, the mosque, the guest house, and the main gate.
- Here are some of the things **to avoid / avoiding** when visiting a heritage site.
- Many of the items such as rings, key chains, or souvenirs are made of unusual shells or unique stones illegally **removed / to remove** from the protected areas.
- The pagoda **damaged / damaging** in the storm has now been rebuilt.
- That man was selling unusual relics illegally **removed / removing** from the protected area of this heritage site.
- Visitors should avoid shops **to sell / selling** unusual relics from the area.

**II. Put the correct preposition for the sentences below.**

<i>preservation</i>	<i>archaeological</i>	<i>complex</i>	<i>cultural</i>	<i>intact</i>
<i>heritage</i>	<i>relics</i>	<i>excavations</i>	<i>dynasties</i>	<i>attraction</i>

- A lot of ancient houses in Ho An remain \_\_\_\_\_ even after several hundred years.
- A lot of \_\_\_\_\_ from ancient times are on display at the national heritage museum.

3. During the different \_\_\_\_\_, the Thang Long Imperial Citadel was expanded.
4. What is special about Hoi An Ancient Town is that it is in a good state of \_\_\_\_\_.
5. The old houses have been pulled down in order to build a modern residential \_\_\_\_\_.
6. These historic buildings are an important part of Hanoi's \_\_\_\_\_ and should be preserved.
7. The archaeological \_\_\_\_\_ that led to the discovery of the ancient city lasted several years.
8. The tour of the cave and grotto system is the main \_\_\_\_\_ for tourists in Phong Nha - Ke Bang National Park.
9. At the Central Sector of the Imperial Citadel of Thang Long, visitors can see the \_\_\_\_\_ site at 18 Hoang Dieu street and several famous monuments.
10. In December 1993, UNESCO recognised the Complex of Hue monuments as a World \_\_\_\_\_ Heritage Site - the first site in Vietnam to be added to the World Heritage list.

**III. Use the word given in capitals at the end of each line to form the word that fits in the gap in the same line.**

1. Cuc Phuong National Park is also a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ zone of fauna.  
(ABUNDANCE)
2. A number of caves in Huong Son Complex are \_\_\_\_\_ sites belonging to the Hoa Binh Culture dated back to over 10,000 years. (ARCHAEOLOGY)
3. Set in a quiet environment, Hoi An is \_\_\_\_\_ by peaceful villages that have crafts such as carpentry, bronze making, and ceramic. (SURROUNDING)
4. Phong Nha - Ke Bang National Park is one of the finest and most \_\_\_\_\_ examples of a complex limestone landform in Southeast Asia. (DISTINCT)
5. The \_\_\_\_\_ work in Con Moong Cave area has been carried out for several years. (EXCAVATE)
6. Phong Nha - Ke Bang National Park can be compared to a huge \_\_\_\_\_ museum.  
(GEOLOGY)
7. Last year, we came to the heritage site and beautiful \_\_\_\_\_ of West Yen Tu. (LAND)
8. The Champa Kingdom was vividly \_\_\_\_\_ by the ruins of My Son. (ILLUSTRATE)
9. The basic architectural and landscape features of the Complex of Hue Monuments have been maintained intact since their original \_\_\_\_\_ in the early 19<sup>t</sup> century. (CONSTRUCT)
10. Yen Tu is a complex of \_\_\_\_\_ masterpieces located in a beautiful landscape.  
(ARCHITECT)

**IV. Choose the best answer A, B, C or D to complete the sentences.**

1. The guest on our show is the youngest golfer \_\_\_\_ the Open.  
A. won                      B. to win                      C. being won                      D. winning
2. I have a message for people \_\_\_\_ by the traffic chaos.  
A. to delay                      B. who delaying                      C. delayed                      D. who delay
3. The \_\_\_\_ items in Con Moong Cave are now kept in Thanh Hoa Museum for preservation and displaying work.  
A. excavating                      B. excavated                      C. excavation                      D. excavator
4. The Citadel of the Ho Dynasty is the only stone citadel in Southeast Asia \_\_\_\_ of large limestone blocks.  
A. constructing                      B. which constructed                      C. to construct                      D. to be constructed
5. Emma Thompson is the most famous actress \_\_\_\_ on the stage here.  
A. appeared                      B. appear                      C. appearing                      D. to appear
6. Have you visited the pagodas \_\_\_\_ on Tran Phu Street in Hoi An.  
A. to lie                      B. lying                      C. lain                      D. lie
7. The Temple of Preah Vihear in Cambodia is composed of a series of sanctuaries \_\_\_\_ by a system of pavements and staircases over an 800 metre long axis.  
A. linked                      B. linking                      C. to link                      D. being linked
8. Cat Ba is also rich of cultural festivals and traditions that are highly potential for \_\_\_\_ and development.  
A. research                      B. growth                      C. conservation                      D. promotion
9. Irresponsible tourists damaged the archaeological site and some of the relics \_\_\_\_ back to the last ruling dynasty.  
A. to date                      B. dating                      C. to be dated                      D. date
10. The ancient houses \_\_\_\_ by the fire are now under reconstruction.  
A. to destroy                      B. destroying                      C. destroyed                      D. destroy
11. The boy \_\_\_\_ in the accident was taken to hospital.  
A. injuring                      B. being injured                      C. have injured                      D. injured
12. Hoi An Ancient Town is preserved in a remarkably \_\_\_\_ state.  
A. damaged                      B. unspoiled                      C. intact                      D. unharmed
13. Son Doong Cave, \_\_\_\_ in 2009, is believed to contain the world's largest cave passage.  
A. first explored                      B. to explore first                      C. exploring first                      D. was first explored
14. The captain was the last \_\_\_\_ the sinking ship.  
A. to leave                      B. that leaving                      C. left                      D. whom to leave
15. Son Doong Cave is the largest cave in the world \_\_\_\_ in Phong Nha - Ke Bang National Park.  
A. which discovered                      B. discovering                      C. to discover                      D. to be discovered

16. The Thang Long Imperial Citadel was built in the 11th century by the Ly Dynasty, \_\_\_\_ the independence of Dai Viet.

- A. marking                      B. offering                      C. commemorating                      D. bringing

17. Melanie was the only person \_\_\_\_ a letter of thanks.

- A. wrote                      B. written                      C. to write                      D. writing

18. No fluorescent lights, no motorcycles, no television, on the 15th day of each lunar month, the riverside town of Hoi An \_\_\_\_ modern life the night off.

- A. gives                      B. lets                      C. brings                      D. turns

19. We came to the temple dedicated to King Dinh Tien Hoang, \_\_\_\_ Hoa Lu to build the citadel.

- A. to choose                      B. choosing                      C. chosen                      D. which chose

20. Who were those people \_\_\_\_ outside?

- A. waited                      B. to wait                      C. who waiting                      D. waiting

**V. Choose the correct word in the box to complete the sentences.**

*attractive*                      *mysterious*                      *combination*                      *preservation*                      *exceptionally*  
*excavation*                      *settlement*                      *harmonious*                      *architectural*                      *geological*

1. In 1805, King Gia Long requested the building of a new, smaller citadel called Hanoi Citadel with a new \_\_\_\_\_ style.

2. The Complex of Hue Monuments is a \_\_\_\_\_ of many royal monuments from the Nguyen Dynasty.

3. As for me, the Citadel of the Ho Dynasty is one of the most \_\_\_\_\_ destinations in Vietnam because of its value.

4. Due to its special \_\_\_\_\_ constitution, Ba Be Lake has very original and special features.

5. The \_\_\_\_\_ site in Con Moong Cave is also one of archaeological sites that contain the thickest cultural layer Vietnam at present.

6. Cat Ba Archipelago bears the \_\_\_\_\_ natural values with its tropical forests which cover the limestone system and the mangrove wetlands.

7. The Complex of Yen Tu Monuments and Landscape is a vivid illustration of human interaction with the environment and traditional human permanent \_\_\_\_\_.

8. Besides the historical value of geology, Phong Nha - Ke Bang is also favoured with the \_\_\_\_\_ and majestic landscapes by nature.

9. Management and \_\_\_\_\_ in Hoi An are further strengthened through master planning and action plans.

10. The architecture of Hoi An is a \_\_\_\_\_ blend of Vietnamese, Chinese and Japanese influences.

### C. READING

#### I. Fill in the bank with a suitable word.

Hoan Kiem Lake is an attractive body of water right in the (1) \_\_\_\_\_ of Ha Noi. Legend has it that in the mid-15th (2) \_\_\_\_\_, Heaven gave Emperor Le Thai To (Le Loi) a magical sword which he used to fight (3) \_\_\_\_\_ the Chinese, the Ming aggressors, out of Viet Nam. After that one day when he was out (4) \_\_\_\_\_ in the lake, a giant (5) \_\_\_\_\_ tortoise suddenly grabbed the sword and (6) \_\_\_\_\_ into the depths of the lake. Since then, the lake has been known as Hoan Kiem Lake (Lake of the Restored Sword) (7) \_\_\_\_\_ it is believed the sword was taken to its original divine owners.

The tiny Tortoise Pagoda, topped with a red star, is (8) \_\_\_\_\_ a small island in the middle of the lake; it is often used (9) \_\_\_\_\_ an emblem of Ha Noi. Every morning around 6 a.m., local residents can be seen around Hoan Kiem Lake (10) \_\_\_\_\_ their morning exercise, jogging or playing badminton.

#### II. Fill in the blanks with a suitable word in the box.

<i>guardians</i>	<i>sacred</i>	<i>intricate</i>	<i>dilapidated</i>
<i>mainland</i>	<i>chiseled</i>	<i>bridge</i>	<i>archaeologists</i>

### MY SON SANCTUARY

Hidden away in the tropical forest near the port city of Da Nang and the very popular World Heritage town of Hoi An is the Champa civilization's (1) \_\_\_\_\_ valley of My Son, or "Beautiful Mountain". I joined the full day package tour from Hoi An, which was quite very convenient as it included all transportation, ticket fee, lunch and guide. I arrived in My Son around 10 o'clock. After walking for a while, I found the complex of tourist facilities, and one of them is the performance hall. Our guide insisted us keeping going into the forest. Within few minutes, I started to see the complex of ancient Hindu temples made from brick

At first, the (2) \_\_\_\_\_ state of the complex was quite shocking, and almost nothing was left to see. I decided to discover the site by myself and I started to be impressed by the amazing quality of brick carving details. The image of Hinduism (3) \_\_\_\_\_ and angels are truly beautiful and reminded me about Angkor in Cambodia. For me, My Son is the great evidence of how Southern Indian art expanded to Southeast Asia since ancient Cham people came from Java where Indian art flourished, and later expand to modern day Vietnam and later Cambodia and Thailand. The construction method of My Son is also very unique: Cham people built a whole block of bricks then burned them to make the whole brick block very solid and strong then (4)

\_\_\_\_\_ into the temple. I walked around the complex many times to enjoy its (5) \_\_\_\_\_ motifs until the guide informed that there are more complex to see.

I went to see another complex, this one is located on the hill and recently partial rebuilt by a group of Italian (6) \_\_\_\_\_, and they are planning to rebuild more, which is a very good news for My Son preservation. The rebuilt complex is very lovely and illustrates the original layout very well even though the new brick really contrasts with the old ones. After that, the guide took me back to the bus and back to Hoi An, it was exactly 3 hours inside My Son. Despite the bad state of preservation, I really enjoyed my visit to My Son, the place has exceeded my expectation and even small complex can clearly show its value as a (7) \_\_\_\_\_ of cultural exchange between India - Java and (8) \_\_\_\_\_ Southeast Asia.

**III. Choose the word or phrase among A, B, C, D that best fits the blank space in the following passage.**

Recognized as a World Heritage Site in Vietnam, Ha Long Bay attracts thousands of visitors every year, who come to enjoy its magnificent natural (1) \_\_\_\_\_. However, the bay is also facing a number of threats that may lead to serious damage to the site.

Wildlife in Ha Long Bay is being (2) \_\_\_\_\_ by overfishing as this is the only job to support most of the inhabitants here. As a (3) \_\_\_\_\_, rare sea creatures may become extinct soon.

(4) \_\_\_\_\_ problem is deforestation of mangrove forests. The mangroves, known as the plants native to Ha Long Bay, provide protection during storms, preserve the shoreline, and act as a natural filter that keeps the sea environment clean and healthy. Numerous wildlife species (5) \_\_\_\_\_ plants and fish also depend on the mangroves.

What is more, some markets in Ha Long Bay sell unusual relics and natural (6) \_\_\_\_\_, such as coral pieces, sea shells, or unique stones, probably illegally removed from the (7) \_\_\_\_\_ areas. Many of these items, converted into rings, key chains, and other souvenirs, are purchased by unsuspecting tourists. Buying these items creates a black market (8) \_\_\_\_\_ to further destruction of Ha Long Bay.

As eco-tourists, we can help to protect Ha Long Bay for future generations in several ways. For example, by sailing or fishing with the fishermen, we can share the benefits of tourism with the local (9) \_\_\_\_\_.

This will help them to increase their income and reduce excessive fishing. We can also help local people to learn about the significance of the mangrove forests and help them to replant the mangroves. We should also avoid purchasing unusual souvenirs. As responsible tourists, we can (10) \_\_\_\_\_ suspected traders or vendors by refusing to buy their illegal goods.

- |                   |              |                |            |
|-------------------|--------------|----------------|------------|
| 1. A. middle      | B. main      | C. landscape   | D. point   |
| 2. A. destruction | B. destroyed | C. destructing | D. destroy |
| 3. A. instant     | B. example   | C. accident    | D. result  |

- |                  |               |               |              |
|------------------|---------------|---------------|--------------|
| 4. A. Others     | B. Other      | C. Another    | D. One       |
| 5. A. making     | B. including  | C. getting    | D. creating  |
| 6. A. objects    | B. dangers    | C. lost       | D. escapes   |
| 7. A. protective | B. protection | C. protecting | D. protected |
| 8. A. allowing   | B. leading    | C. appointing | D. sending   |
| 9. A. community  | B. people     | C. society    | D. human     |
| 10. A. do        | B. discourage | C. compare    | D. contrast  |

**IV. Read the passage and choose the best answer.**

A rather surprising geographical feature of Antarctica is that a huge freshwater lake, one of the world's largest and deepest, lies **hidden** there under four kilometers of ice. Now known as Lake Vostok, this huge body of water is located under the ice block that comprises Antarctica. The lake is able to exist in its unfrozen state beneath this block of ice because its waters are warmed by geothermal heat from the earth's core. The thick glacier above Lake Vostok actually insulates it from the **frigid** temperatures on the surface.

The lake was first discovered in the 1970s while a research team was conducting an aerial survey of the area. Radio waves from the survey equipment penetrated the ice and revealed a body of water of indeterminate size. It was not until much more recently that data collected by satellite made scientists aware of the tremendous size of the lake; the satellite-borne radar detected an extremely flat region where the ice remains level because it is floating on the water of the lake.

The discovery of such a huge freshwater lake trapped under Antarctica is of interest to the scientific community because of the potential that the lake contains ancient **microbes** that have survived for thousands of years, unaffected by factors such as nuclear fallout and elevated ultraviolet light that have affected organisms in more exposed areas. The downside of the discovery, however, lies in the difficulty of conducting research on the lake in such a harsh climate and in the problems associated with obtaining uncontaminated samples from the lake without actually exposing the lake to contamination. Scientists are looking for possible ways to accomplish this.

*Question 1:* The word "**hidden**" in paragraph 1 is closest in meaning to \_\_\_\_.

- A. undrinkable      B. untouched      C. unexploitable      D. undiscovered

*Question 2:* What is true of Lake Vostok?

- A. It is completely frozen.      B. It is saltwater lake.  
C. It is beneath a thick slab of ice.      D. It is heated by the sun.

*Question 3:* Which of the following is closest in meaning to "**frigid**" in paragraph 1?

- A. extremely cold      B. easily broken      C. quite harsh      D. lukewarm

*Question 4:* All of the following are true about the 1970 survey of Antarctica EXCEPT that it \_\_\_\_.

- A. was conducted by air
- B. made use of radio waves
- C. could not determine the lake's exact size
- D. was controlled by a satellite

Question 5: It can be inferred from the passage that the ice would not be flat if \_\_\_\_.

- A. there were no lake underneath
- B. the lake were not so big
- C. Antarctica were not so cold
- D. radio waves were not used

Question 6: The word "**microbes**" in paragraph 3 could best be replaced by which of the following?

- A. Pieces of dust
- B. Tiny bubbles
- C. Tiny organisms
- D. Rays of light

Question 7: Lake Vostok is potentially important to scientists because \_\_\_\_.

- A. can be studied using radio waves
- B. may contain uncontaminated microbes
- C. may have elevated levels of ultraviolet light
- D. has already been contaminated

Question 8: The purpose of the passage is to \_\_\_\_.

- A. explain how Lake Vostok was discovered
- B. provide satellite data concerning Antarctica
- C. discuss future plans for Lake Vostok
- D. present an unexpected aspect of Antarctica's geography

#### D. WRITING

**I. Rewrite the following sentences using present participle, past participle or to-infinitive.**

1. Maxicorp were the only company which replied my letter.

---

2. Do you know the man who is talking to my father?

---

3. Applications which were sent after 23<sup>rd</sup> will not be considered.

---

4. We have a lot of exercises which we have to do tonight.

---

5. Studies of her son are the most important thing that she cares about.

---

6. The equipment which belongs to the club is insured.

---



7. George is the first person that we will interview.

---

8. Meetings which are held every month are called monthly meetings.

---

9. The most excellent students who were rewarded the scholarship would have a two-week holiday in Vung Tau.

---

---

10. The trees which were planted last week are growing well.

---

**II. Rewrite the following sentences using present participle, past participle or to-infinitive.**

1. The man who is talking to John is from Korea.

---

2. The ideas which are presented in that book are interesting.

---

3. Ann is the woman who is responsible for preparing the budget.

---

4. English has an alphabet that consists of 26 letters.

---

5. The books that are on that shelf are mine.

---

6. The children who attend that school receive a good education.

---

7. The psychologists who study the nature of sleep have made important discoveries.

---

8. The sunlight which comes through the window wakes me up early every morning.

---

9. John Quincy Adams, who was born on July 11<sup>th</sup> 1767, was the sixth president of the United States.

---

10. These are the ancient houses which were built a long time ago.

---

**PART 3: TEST YOURSELF**

**I. Find the word which has a different sound in the part underlined.**

- |                     |                    |                         |                      |
|---------------------|--------------------|-------------------------|----------------------|
| 1. A. <u>study</u>  | B. <u>business</u> | C. <u>function</u>      | D. <u>number</u>     |
| 2. A. <u>soft</u>   | B. <u>modern</u>   | C. <u>communication</u> | D. <u>technology</u> |
| 3. A. <u>love</u>   | B. <u>box</u>      | C. <u>hobby</u>         | D. <u>problem</u>    |
| 4. A. <u>gone</u>   | B. <u>go</u>       | C. <u>hot</u>           | D. <u>long</u>       |
| 5. A. <u>houses</u> | B. <u>glasses</u>  | C. <u>horses</u>        | D. <u>studies</u>    |

**II. Choose the word which has a different stress pattern from the others.**

- |                   |              |               |               |
|-------------------|--------------|---------------|---------------|
| 1. A. inaccurate  | B. illegal   | C. positive   | D. domestic   |
| 2. A. confident   | B. eternal   | C. dangerous  | D. healthier  |
| 3. A. independent | B. academic  | C. compulsory | D. unexpected |
| 4. A. secondary   | B. immediate | C. miraculous | D. domestic   |
| 5. A. simple      | B. polite    | C. formal     | D. instant    |

**III. Choose the correct words to complete the sentences.**

- Scholars believe that there are still relics buried under the tomb and awaiting **excavation / heritage**.
- Lack of **preservation / customer** of this heritage building has resulted in damage to its walls.
- The best part of our trip to the national park was the tour to many **ancient / antiques** ruins.
- Phong Nha - Ke Bang has a complex **geological / biological** structure with different varieties of stone
- The ruling **scholar / dynasty** was responsible for reuniting the kingdom.
- Exploring / Destroying** the caves and grottos in Phong Nha - Ke Bang National Park is the most popular activity for visitors
- This heritage site is famous for its beautiful **scenes / scenery**.
- Visiting the Tomb of Khai Dinh, tourists will notice a mix of eastern and western **dynasties / architecture**.
- Scientists working on the site found many ancient tools, tombs and pottery, and made some important **archaeological / technological** discoveries.
- The tombs are part of our historical **heritage / traditions**.

**IV. Choose the best answer A, B, C or D to complete the sentences.**

- We noticed a pile of stones \_\_\_\_ in the road.  

A. left	B. leaving	C. to leave	D. having left
---------	------------	-------------	----------------
- The vegetation layers in Cat Ba Archipelago from spectacular and scenic landscapes and make the site become \_\_\_\_ to all Vietnam's typical ecosystems.  

A. home	B. house	C. scenery	D. basis
---------	----------	------------	----------
- The monuments of My Son are the most important constructions of the Champa Kingdom, \_\_\_\_ coast of Central Vietnam from the 4<sup>th</sup> to the 13<sup>th</sup> centuries.

- A. to flourish      B. flourished      C. flourishing      D. to be flourished
4. A lorry \_\_\_\_ concrete pipes has overturned.  
A. carried      B. being carried      C. carrying      D. to carry
5. Most tourists like buying clothes, lanterns, and other handicraft \_\_\_\_ by local craftsmen in Hoi An. C. made
- A. to make      B. making      C. made      D. make
6. The only thing \_\_\_\_ at the Citadel of the Ho Dynasty is the stone walls.  
A. to see      B. seeing      C. sees      D. see
7. The Complex of Hue Monuments was the first site in Vietnam \_\_\_\_ as a World Heritage Site by UNESCO.  
A. to be recognized      B. be recognizing      C. recognizes      D. recognize
8. Located in Hoang Dieu Street, Hau Lau has \_\_\_\_ architecture of the Eastern and Western styles  
A. abundant      B. authentic      C. mixed      D. complex
9. The limestone in Phong Nha is not continuous, which has led to a particularly \_\_\_\_ shape.  
A. distinctive      B. similar      C. genuine      D. diverse
10. Near the White House is another famous landmark \_\_\_\_ the Washington Monument.  
A. is which      B. which call      C. called      D. it is called
11. The distinction of the Khai Dinh Tomb is the unique architecture \_\_\_\_ the art of Rococo and the Vietnamese style.  
A. combined      B. combining      C. to be combined      D. which combine
12. Although some of the structures are now \_\_\_\_, most of the significant existing monuments have been partially restored.  
A. in danger      B. at risk      C. in ruins      D. at war
13. The food \_\_\_\_ in this supermarket is very good.  
A. selling      B. which sold      C. to sell      D. sold
14. My Son Sanctuary is an area \_\_\_\_ with Hindu-like architecture and art.  
A. covering      B. covered      C. which covered      D. to cover
15. Most houses in Hoi An are of \_\_\_\_ architecture dating from the 17<sup>th</sup> to the 19<sup>th</sup> century.  
A. tradition      B. traditional      C. ancient      D. customary
16. To plant rice, farmers, \_\_\_\_, set young plants in the mud.  
A. they wade with bare feet in the water      B. who water wading in their bare feet  
C. wading in the water with their bare feet      D. whose bare feet wading in the water

17. The nearly 4-hour \_\_\_\_\_ from Ha Long Bay to Cat Ba Island afforded us visits to well-known caves and beaches.

- A. travel                      B. vacation                      C. boating                      D. cruise

18. Another thing that I was really impressed with Hoi An is the preservation of the whole town which is very amazing and very \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. correct                      B. exact                      C. authentic                      D. original

19. A fine tomb, \_\_\_\_\_, marks the grave of the poet Chaucer.

- A. which in the fifteenth century was erecting                      B. erected in the fifteenth century  
C. erecting in the fifteenth century                      D. being erected in the fifteenth century

20. I live in a pleasant room \_\_\_\_\_ the garden.

- A. to overlook                      B. overlooked                      C. overlooking                      D. which overlooking

**V. Fill in the gap with a suitable word to complete the passage.**

**THE AREA OF OLD CARVED STONES IN SA PA**

The area of old carved stones in Sa Pa lies mainly in the Muong Hoa Valley, (1)

\_\_\_\_\_ there are settlements of ethnic minority people in Sa Pa District. Lao Cai Province. Carved stones here have been discovered since a long time (2) \_\_\_\_\_. In 1925, a French scholar coming here discovered

more than 30 pieces of stone that had been carved with various images, scattered along the Hoa Spring bank. Later, other scientists have come here to (3) \_\_\_\_\_ the carved pieces of stone. Until now, researchers have discovered more than 200 (4) \_\_\_\_\_ of stone carved with different images, among them are the big ones which have complicated designs.

The (5) \_\_\_\_\_ common patterns are images of mountains, hills and fields. In one pieces of one, we can find images of houses, following the patter of house on site with the form of bond with curved roof, reminding the image of here on the Dong Son bronze (6) \_\_\_\_\_.

Particularly, a (7) \_\_\_\_\_ of researchers have raised the hypothesis of traces of 3 kinds of writing system, following the pattern of pictorial writing with straight and curved lines. There are writing systems almost (8) \_\_\_\_\_ to the writing systems found on amulets of Tay ethnic group and Dao ethnic group, but they are not Tay characters. The discovery of 3 above kinds of writing system on carved pieces of stones makes more complicated the determination of the author of those works. Maybe those authors (9) \_\_\_\_\_ to many different ethnic minorities and have achieved their works in different times.

There are opinions underlining that those pieces of stone have been carved by the old Viet people. At present, there remain a number of (10) \_\_\_\_\_ about the “Father piece” and “Mother piece”

of stone related to inhabitants of the areas lying at the mountain foot coming here to find new settlements. However, the problem of determination of the real authors of those works is still to be solved.

**VI. Choose the word in the box to complete the text.**

*performs*      *meeting*      *nature*      *skill*      *attacked*  
*set*      *sessions*      *rocky*      *construction*      *considering*

The citadel of the Ho Dynasty was built according to the Feng Shui principles, (1)

\_\_\_\_\_ the flowering of neo-Confucianism in the late 14<sup>th</sup> century in Vietnam and its spread to other (2) \_\_\_\_\_ of East Asia. According to these principles, it was located in a landscape of great (3) \_\_\_\_\_ beauty on an axis (4) \_\_\_\_\_ the Tuong Son and Don Son Mountains in a plain between the Ma and Buoi Rivers. In terms of architectural history, the citadel of the Ho Dynasty (5) \_\_\_\_\_ an important role in the planning and building of urban areas in Vietnam. It shows the uniqueness in the (6) \_\_\_\_\_ of a citadel in general and a stone citadel in particular, and a breakthrough in Vietnam's tradition of citadel building.

Thanks to the unique construction techniques, all the (7) \_\_\_\_\_ stone sections are intact and have not been (8) \_\_\_\_\_ by time and weather or by recent urban encroachment. The citadel of the Ho Dynasty is an architectural (9) \_\_\_\_\_ of the 14<sup>th</sup> century with impressive architecture of the walls and other parts. The citadel buildings represent an outstanding example of a new (10) \_\_\_\_\_ of Southeast Asian imperial city with a combination between the Vietnamese architecture and the unique building techniques of Southeast Asia and Eastern Asia.

**II. Choose the word or phrase among A, B, C or D that best fits the blank space in the following passage.**

**HOI AN ANCIENT TOWN**

Arriving in Hoi An around 9 p.m, I was really relieved when I discovered that the (1) \_\_\_\_ town was peacefully quiet, something I am really (2) \_\_\_\_ is that Hoi An at night may become crazy club scenes. In the next morning, I woke up very early, and walked around the town admiring waterfront areas where local fishermen were ready to go out for day fishing, the very lively market and extremely ring and empty streets. (3) \_\_\_\_ there was no tourist, only locals then and the souvenir shops were still close, I felt that Hoi An at that moment was an extremely gorgeous place to visit.

The yellowish Chinese styled houses along the street together with decorative bushes of bougainvillea flower are lovely sights and very (4) \_\_\_\_\_. The layout of houses was claimed to be unique for not strictly complied with Feng Shui but for benefit of better ventilation in tropical region. Another thing that I am really (5) \_\_\_\_ is the preservation of the whole town which is very amazing and very authentic, which is a thing that cannot be found in Melaka, Singapore or Macao. The Japanese Bridge is maybe the only sight that I found very interesting for its stories that the Japanese built this bridge in (6)

\_\_\_\_\_ to calm evil serpent spirit "Namazu" that caused earthquake in very faraway Japan since they believe Hoi An is located on the back of the serpent. I strangely found that there are still many nice temples, (7) \_\_\_\_\_ the one dedicate to Confucius which has more unique and interesting Vietnamese elements more than the preserved one in the core zone.

I also (8) \_\_\_\_\_ that Hoi An is not only popular with European tourists but also Korean, Japanese, Australian and New Zealander. After sunset, the whole town waterfront becomes a night market with many local foods. And at that time Hoi An is very charming with hundreds of paper and (9) \_\_\_\_\_ lanterns. Hoi An at night seems to be a very popular place for pre-wedding photo shooting, as I saw many Vietnamese couples in their traditional dresses with their photographer teams everywhere especially around the Japanese Bridge, so a great place to see local contemporary weeding cultures.

All in all, I really enjoyed my time in Hoi An for its lovely (10) \_\_\_\_\_ nice townscape.

Note: - bougainvillea flower = hoa giấy

- townscape = cảnh quan thành phố

- |                  |                 |               |                |
|------------------|-----------------|---------------|----------------|
| 1. A. middle     | B. mainly       | C. whole      | D. major       |
| 2. A. neglected  | B. concerned    | C. noticed    | D. protected   |
| 3. A. Because    | B. As           | C. For        | D. Since       |
| 4. A. photograph | B. photographer | C. photogenic | D. photography |
| 5. A. impressing | B. impressed    | C. impressive | D. impression  |
| 6. A. order      | B. that         | C. as         | D. other       |
| 7. A. specially  | B. contrarily   | C. partly     | D. especially  |
| 8. A. destroyed  | B. noted        | C. wrote      | D. ruined      |
| 9. A. silk       | B. clothes      | C. shirts     | D. shoes       |
| 10. A. weather   | B. atmosphere   | C. tent       | D. villager    |

### VIII. Read a text about common wedding rituals in the USA and answer the questions that follow.

The rules of etiquette in American restaurants depend upon a number of factors the physical location of the restaurant, e.g., rural or urban; the type of restaurant, e.g., informal or formal; and certain standards that are more universal. In other words, some standards of etiquette vary significantly while other standards apply almost anywhere. Learning the proper etiquette in a particular type of restaurant in a particular area may sometimes require instruction, but more commonly **it** simply requires sensitivity and experience. For example, while it is acceptable to read a magazine in a coffee shop, it is inappropriate to do the same in a more luxurious setting. And, if you are eating in a very **rustic** setting it may be fine to tuck your napkin into your shirt, but if you are in a sophisticated urban restaurant this behavior would demonstrate a lack of **manners**. It is **safe to say**, however, that in virtually every restaurant it is unacceptable to indiscriminately throw your food on the floor. The conclusion we can most likely draw

from the above is that while the types and locations of restaurants determine etiquette appropriate to them, some rules apply to all restaurants.

*Question 1:* With what topic is this passage primarily concerned?

- A. Instruction in proper etiquette  
 B. Rules of etiquette  
 C. Variable and universal standards of etiquette  
 D. The importance of good manners

*Question 2:* Which of the following words is most similar to the meaning of "**rustic**"?

- A. Ancient  
 B. Urban  
 C. Unsophisticated  
 D. Agricultural

*Question 3:* The author uses the phrase "**safe to say**" in order to demonstrate that the idea is \_\_\_\_.

- A. somewhat innocent  
 B. quite certain  
 C. very clever  
 D. possible

*Question 4:* What does the word "**it**" in bold and underlined refer to?

- A. Knowing the type of restaurant  
 B. Clear instruction  
 C. Learning the proper etiquette  
 D. Sensitivity

*Question 5:* According to the passage, which of the following is a universal rule of etiquette?

- A. Eating in rustic settings  
 B. Tucking a napkin in your shirt  
 C. Reading a magazine at a coffee shop  
 D. Not throwing food on the floor

*Question 6:* The word "**manners**" in bold could best be replaced by which of the following?

- A. Tact  
 B. Ceremony  
 C. Experience  
 D. Character

## Unit 9. CITIES OF THE FUTURE

### PART 1: VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR REVIEW

#### A. VOCABULARY

city dweller	/ˈsɪti - ˈdwelə(r)/	(n)	người sống ở đô thị, cư dân thành thị
detect	/dɪˈtekt/	(v)	dò tìm, phát hiện ra
infrastructure	/ˈɪnfəstrʌktʃə(r)/	(n)	cơ sở hạ tầng
inhabitant	/ɪnˈhæbɪtənt/	(n)	cư dân, người cư trú
liveable	/ˈlɪvəbl/	(adj)	sống được
optimistic	/ˌɒptɪˈmɪstɪk/	(adj)	lạc quan
overcrowded	/ˌəʊvəˈkraʊdɪd/	(adj)	chật ních, đông nghẹt
pessimistic	/ˌpesɪˈmɪstɪk/	(adj)	bi quan
quality of life	/ˈkwɒləti əv laɪf/	(n)	chất lượng sống
renewable	/rɪˈnjuːəbl/	(adj)	có thể tái tạo lại
sustainable	/səˈsteɪnəbl/	(adj)	không gây hại cho môi trường, có tính bền vững

upgrade	/'ʌpɡreɪd/	(v)	nâng cấp
urban	/'ɜ:bən/	(adj)	thuộc về đô thị
urban planner	/'ɜ:bən 'plænə(r)/	(n)	người / chuyên gia quy hoạch đô thị

## B. GRAMMAR REVIEW

### I. BASIC CONDITIONALS

**1. Type 0:** Câu điều kiện diễn tả thói quen hoặc một sự thật hiển nhiên.

#### a. Habit (Thói quen)

**If + simple present tense ..., + simple present tense...**

Ex: I usually walk to school if I have enough time.

#### b. Command (Mệnh Lệnh).

**If + simple present tense ..., + command form of verb + ...**

Ex: - If you go to the Post Office, mail this letter for me.

- Please call me if you hear anything from Jane.

**2. Type 1: FUTURE POSSIBLE** (Diễn tả một khả năng có thể xảy ra ở hiện tại hoặc tương lai).

**If + S + V (simple present), S + will / shall + V (nguyên thể)**

Ex: If I have time, I will go.

**3. Type 2: PRESENT UNREAL** (Diễn tả tình huống không có thật ở hiện tại hoặc tương lai)

**If + S + V (past subjunctive/ simple past), S + would / could / might + V.**

Ex: I don't win a lot of money, so I can't spend most of it travelling round the world.

→ If I won a lot of money, I could spend most of it travelling round the world.

**4. Type 3: PAST UNREAL** (Diễn tả tình huống không có thật ở quá khứ)

**If + S + had + Vp2, S + would / could / might + have + Vp2**

Ex: I didn't tell her any good news because I wasn't here early.

→ If I had been here earlier, I would have told her some good news.

**5. Type 4:** Câu điều kiện pha trộn:

**Form 1: Type 3 và Type 2**

**If + S + had + Vp2, S + would / could / might + V.**

Ex: He isn't a rich man now because he didn't take my advice.

→ If he had taken my advice, he would be a rich man now.

**Form 2: Type 2 và Type 3**

**If + S + V (past subjunctive simple past), S + would / could / might + have + Vp2**

Ex: If I were him, I wouldn't have got married to her.



## II. TAG QUESTIONS

### A. Ý NGHĨA CỦA CÂU HỎI ĐUÔI

1. *Câu hỏi đuôi là một phần nhỏ được thêm vào sau mỗi lời phát biểu. Chúng ta sử dụng câu hỏi đuôi để xin phép sự đồng ý hoặc kiểm chứng xem thông tin có đúng không.*

Ex: There is no milk in the fridge, isn't there?

#### 2. Quy tắc chung:

- Lời phát biểu **khẳng định** + câu hỏi đuôi **phủ định**

- Lời phát biểu **phủ định** + câu hỏi đuôi **khẳng định**

Ex: She likes chocolate, doesn't she?

He doesn't go to school on weekends, does he?

3. *Phần câu hỏi đuôi phủ định thường được viết rút gọn. Chủ ngữ của câu hỏi đuôi luôn luôn là một đại từ.*

### B. SPECIAL TYPES (CÁC DẠNG ĐẶC BIỆT)

#### 1. Phần đuôi của “I am....., aren't I”.

Ex: I'm going to do it again, aren't I?

#### 2. Imperatives and Requests (Câu mệnh lệnh và câu yêu cầu):

+ Có phần đuôi là “Won't you?” khi cầu phát biểu diễn tả lời mời

Ex: Take your seat, won't you? (Mời ông ngồi).

+ Có phần đuôi là “will you?” khi cầu phát biểu diễn tả lời yêu cầu hoặc mệnh lệnh phủ định

Ex: Open the door, will you? ( Xin vui lòng mở cửa)

Don't be late, will you ? (Đừng đi trễ nha)

#### 3. Phần đuôi của câu bắt đầu bằng “Lets ..” là “shall we?”

Ex: Let's go swimming, shall we?

- *Nhưng phần đuôi của “Let me, ..... will you”*

#### 4. Đại từ bất định:

- *Khi chủ ngữ là Đại từ bất định chỉ vật:* Nothing, anything, something everything được thay thế bằng “**It**” ở câu hỏi đuôi.

Ex: Everything will be all right, won't it?

- *Khi chủ ngữ là Đại từ bất định chỉ người:* No one, nobody, anyone, anybody, someone, somebody, everybody, everyone được thay thế bằng “**They**” trong câu hỏi đuôi.

Ex: Someone remembered to leave the messages, didn't they?

**Note:** *Nothing, Nobody, No one* được dùng trong mệnh đề chính, động từ câu hỏi đuôi sẽ phải ở dạng khẳng định. (Vì *Nothing, Nobody, No one* có nghĩa phủ định)

Ex: Nothing gives you more pleasure than listening to music, does it?

**5. This/ That được thay thế là “It”.**

Ex: This won't take long, will it?

**6. These/ Those được thay thế là “They”.**

Ex: Those are nice, aren't they?

**7. Khi trong câu nói có từ phủ định như: seldom, rarely, hardly, no, without, never, few, little... phần đuôi phải ở dạng khẳng định.**

Ex: He seldom goes to the movies, does he?

**8. Nếu câu phát biểu có dạng:**

- *You'd better* → câu hỏi đuôi sẽ là: *hadn't you?*

- *You'd rather* → câu hỏi đuôi sẽ là: *Wouldn't you?*

- *You used to* → câu hỏi đuôi sẽ là: *didn't you?*

- *S + ought to + V, oughtn't + S?*

**9. Câu đầu là “wish” thì ta dùng “May” trong câu hỏi đuôi.**

Ex: I wish to study English, may I?

**10. Chủ ngữ là ONE ta dùng “you” hoặc “one”.**

Ex: One can be one's master, can't you/one?

**11. Câu cảm thán: Lấy danh từ trong câu đổi thành đại từ, [to be] dùng “is, am, are”.**

Ex: - What a beautiful dress, isn't it?

- What a stupid boy, isn't he?

- How intelligent you are, aren't you?

**12. Câu đầu có “It seems that + mệnh đề” ta lấy mệnh đề làm câu hỏi đuôi.**

Ex: It seems that you are right, aren't you?

**13. Chủ từ là mệnh đề danh từ: Dùng “it”**

Ex: - What you have said is wrong, isn't it?

- Why he killed himself seems a secret, doesn't it?

**14. Câu đầu có I + các động từ sau: think, believe, suppose, figure, assume, fancy, imagine, reckon, expect, seem, feel + mệnh đề phụ: Ta lấy mệnh phụ làm câu hỏi đuôi.**

Ex: - I think he will come here, won't he?

- I don't believe Mary can do it, can she?

**Note:** - Mệnh đề chính có **not** thì vẫn tính như ở mệnh đề phụ.

- Cùng mẫu này nhưng nếu chủ từ không phải là **I** thì lại dùng mệnh đề đầu làm câu hỏi đuôi.

Ex: She thinks he will come, doesn't she?

## PART 2: EXERCISES

### A. PHONETICS

#### I. Find the word which has a different sound in the part underlined.

1. A. book                      B. look                      C. floor                      D. good
2. A. hate                      B. mate                      C. cake                      D. manage
3. A. thank                      B. than                      C. month                      D. youth
4. A. noon                      B. good                      C. soon                      D. food
5. A. chorus                      B. cheap                      C. child                      D. change

#### II. Choose the word which has a different stress pattern from the others.

1. A. podium                      B. title                      C. notice                      D. pioneer
2. A. nature                      B. marriage                      C. value                      D. belief
3. A. police                      B. spirit                      C. banquet                      D. culture
4. A. determine                      B. maintain                      C. sacrifice                      D. apologize
5. A. inversion                      B. miserable                      C. pleasant                      D. difficulty

### B. VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR

#### I. Put the verbs in brackets into the correct forms.

1. If I didn't feel so tired, I (go) \_\_\_\_\_ out with you.
2. If you (not pass) \_\_\_\_\_ the exam, would you take it again?
3. If I (be) \_\_\_\_\_ you, I would apply for the job.
4. I could repair the car if I (have) \_\_\_\_\_ the right tools.
5. If I (study) \_\_\_\_\_ hard, I would have passed the exam.
6. If I (not be) \_\_\_\_\_ busy yesterday, I would have visited you.
7. She (go) \_\_\_\_\_ to the university if she had had the opportunity.
8. Suppose they had offered her a job, do you think she (take) \_\_\_\_\_ it?
9. If she hadn't been ill yesterday, she (go) \_\_\_\_\_ to work now.
10. If I (be) \_\_\_\_\_ you, I wouldn't have told him the truth yesterday.
11. If today were Monday, I (not go) \_\_\_\_\_ to work yesterday.
12. What would happen if you (not go) \_\_\_\_\_ to work tomorrow.
13. If I had gone to your party last night, I (be) \_\_\_\_\_ very tired now.

14. She must apologize to me or I (never speak) \_\_\_\_\_ to her again.
15. If he hadn't stayed up late, he (not finish) \_\_\_\_\_ his task yesterday.

**II. Add question tags to the following statements.**

1. Everyone can learn how to swim, \_\_\_\_\_?
2. Nobody cheated in the exam, \_\_\_\_\_?
3. Nothing went wrong while I was gone, \_\_\_\_\_?
4. I am invited, \_\_\_\_\_?
5. This bridge is not very safe, \_\_\_\_\_?
6. These sausages are delicious, \_\_\_\_\_?
7. You haven't lived here long, \_\_\_\_\_?
8. The weather forecast wasn't very good, \_\_\_\_\_?
9. He'd better come to see me, \_\_\_\_\_?
10. You need to stay longer, \_\_\_\_\_?

**III. Choose the correct words in the bracket to complete the sentences.**

*innovation*                      *availability*                      *urbanization*                      *detectors*                      *inhabitants*  
*sustainability*                      *developments*                      *investment*                      *creation*                      *optimistic*

1. Songdo is unique, offering city \_\_\_\_\_ something they have never had access to before.
2. The city officials are \_\_\_\_\_ that the downtown will continue to be a green population center.
3. The information will be collected through the \_\_\_\_\_.
4. Cities need to make full use of land in order to achieve urban \_\_\_\_\_.
5. Some of the other problems predicted for the near future include limited and diminishing arable land, deforestation, \_\_\_\_\_, and degradation of land and water.
6. For South Korea, Songdo is more than a hi-tech business district, but a temple for future \_\_\_\_\_.
7. Songdo is the prototype for the green \_\_\_\_\_ the Korean government wants to build the economy on in the future.
8. The pace of \_\_\_\_\_ is happening fast in the United States.
9. I think the cities of tomorrow also need to consider the \_\_\_\_\_ of open space.
10. Cities at their best are social environments where \_\_\_\_\_ and human developments go hand in hand.

**IV. Use the word given in capitals at the end of each line to form the word that fits in the gap in the same line.**

1. The rapid growth of the population has caused daunting problems for city planners, such as \_\_\_\_\_ roads. (CROWDED)
2. It comes as no surprise that Seattle is the gold standard of \_\_\_\_\_ city living. (SUSTAIN)
3. New York City is expected to increase its \_\_\_\_\_ energy capacity by 50% by 2050. (RENEW)
4. Our communities will be \_\_\_\_\_ and more sustainable, so our quality of life will be better. (CLEAN)
5. The government is making plans to \_\_\_\_\_ sensors and cameras in the city centre to detect traffic problems and help drivers to avoid traffic jams. (INSTALLMENT)
6. It's urgent to upgrade the city's transport \_\_\_\_\_ because almost all the roads get flooded after heavy rain. (INFRASTRUCTURAL)
7. We can improve the quality of life of the inhabitants by \_\_\_\_\_ pollution. (REDUCE)
8. City dwellers can enjoy better health care than people living in the \_\_\_\_\_, but they are usually busier and more stressed because of the city's fast pace of life. (COUNTRY)
9. They are building a new waste \_\_\_\_\_ plant to treat wastewater before it is reused or discharged into rivers. (PROCESS)
10. Be \_\_\_\_\_ for overcrowded streets and shopping malls when you visit big cities like Hong Kong and Beijing. (PREPARE)

**V. Choose the best answer A, B, C or D to complete the sentences.**

1. \_\_\_\_ there are some more ideas, we can end the meeting now.  
A. Unless                      B. If                              C. As if                              D. In case
2. "It's really raining." - "Yes. If the weather \_\_\_\_, we'll have to camp somewhere else."  
A. would get worse    B. might get worse    C. get worse                      D. should get worse
3. If anyone \_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_ him I \_\_\_\_ back at 9 o'clock.  
A. calls / tell / will be                              B. called / telling / would be  
C. is calling / tells / am                              D. will call / to tell / am
4. If she asks for money, I \_\_\_\_ her.  
A. will give                      B. gave                              C. would give                      D. would have given
5. If I \_\_\_\_ this exam, I'll go to the university next summer.

- A. pass                      B. to pass                      C. had passed                      D. passed
6. As we move toward 2050, we are facing the consequences of \_\_\_\_ urbanization and population growth.  
A. promoting                      B. improving                      C. moving                      D. accelerating
7. Studies reveal that food production will need to increase by 70 percent to \_\_\_\_ the over 9 billion people on Earth.  
A. give                      B. supply                      C. provide                      D. feed
8. New York has invested substantially in improving the \_\_\_\_ of its waterways in recent years.  
A. quality                      B. quantity                      C. level                      D. feature
9. China has already been experimenting with ways to make its cities more \_\_\_\_ for the last two decades.  
A. sustainable                      B. harmless                      C. continued                      D. natural
10. China has already been experimenting with ways to make its cities more \_\_\_\_ for the last two decades.  
A. sustain                      B. sustainable                      C. survival                      D. available
11. Don't leave anything behind, \_\_\_\_?  
A. do you                      B. don't you                      C. will you                      D. shall we
12. That isn't Bill driving, \_\_\_\_?  
A. is it                      B. is that                      C. isn't that                      D. isn't it
13. Nobody likes the play, \_\_\_\_?  
A. do they                      B. don't they                      C. didn't they                      D. did they
14. The children can read English, \_\_\_\_?  
A. can't they                      B. can they                      C. they can                      D. they can't
15. Your grandfather was a millionaire, \_\_\_\_?  
A. was he                      B. is he                      C. wasn't he                      D. isn't he
16. I think the cities of tomorrow also need to consider the availability of open space, \_\_\_\_?  
A. do I                      B. don't I                      C. do they                      D. don't they
17. We will need new technologies to generate energy and use it in clean and safe ways, only from fully \_\_\_\_ sources.  
A. replaced                      B. controlled                      C. renewable                      D. endurable
18. Across the globe, nations are preparing for water scarcity, \_\_\_\_?  
A. are they                      B. aren't they                      C. will they                      D. won't they
19. Copenhagen has been voted the most \_\_\_\_ city in the world several times.  
A. ecological friendly                      B. ecologically soundly  
C. eco-friendly                      D. friendly ecologically
20. This is your essay on smart cities by 2050, \_\_\_\_?

A. is this

B. isn't this

C. is it

D. isn't it

**VI. Complete the sentences with the correct question tags.**

1. Berlin ties green spaces beautifully into the urban landscape, \_\_\_\_\_?
2. Chicago is dedicated to being a green building leader, \_\_\_\_\_?
3. All new cars sold in the country will be emissions free in less than 35 years, \_\_\_\_\_?
4. Tianjin, the eco-city in China, has focused on ensuring all its structures qualify as green buildings, \_\_\_\_\_?
5. There is lack of the formation necessary for making urban progress, \_\_\_\_\_?
6. The Mayor of London did not believe an electric double decker was technically feasible, \_\_\_\_\_?
7. Your life will be organised by a domestic computer, \_\_\_\_\_?
8. The global population is growing towards nine billion by 2050, \_\_\_\_\_?
9. There will be electric, driverless cars, \_\_\_\_\_?
10. Yahoo CEO Marissa Mayer banned telecommuting, \_\_\_\_\_?
11. The start of the 21st century in China and the Arab world was marked by the creation of new, energy-consuming cities, \_\_\_\_\_?
12. By 2050, between 70 and 80 percent of the world's population will live in cities, \_\_\_\_\_?
13. Tomorrow's cities are managed by a computer, \_\_\_\_\_?
14. The global conference provides us with the occasion for looking more closely at several solutions, \_\_\_\_\_?
15. We do not oppose the urban situations as they exist today, \_\_\_\_\_?
16. One billion children are deprived of one or more services essential to survival and development, \_\_\_\_\_?

**C. READING**

**I. Fill in the blank with a suitable word.**

Silicon Valley is (1) \_\_\_\_\_ to hundreds of technology companies, so it comes as no surprise that San Jose has partnered with technological giant Intel to transform itself (2) \_\_\_\_\_ a smart city. San Jose and Intel will work (3) \_\_\_\_\_ to further the city's Green Vision initiative - a 15-year plan for economic growth, and improve (4) \_\_\_\_\_ of life - which it launched in 2007.

Intel expects to help San Jose create 25,000 clean-tech jobs, drive economic growth, and improve the city's environmental (5) \_\_\_\_\_. To achieve this (6) \_\_\_\_\_ Intel will work with the city to track real-time data on air quality, noise pollution, traffic flow, and other environmental and (7) \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_ concerns which it will then use to encourage (8) \_\_\_\_\_ to reduce emissions by using public transportation or bicycles to get to work or school.

Smart cities may sound like something of the distant future (9) \_\_\_\_\_ many people thought the same thing about smartphones and smart homes. Up to now, over 70 percent of American adults have owned a smartphone and 1.9 billion smart home devices have been installed. If smart cities are (10) \_\_\_\_\_ like these other smart innovations, we will see them appear in our communities sooner rather than later.

**II. Fill each of the numbered blanks in the following passage. Use only one word in each space.**

*self-driven*      *decrease*      *estimate*      *circuits*      *intelligent*  
*booming*      *technology*      *digitization*      *non-renewable*      *advancements*

The cities of the future will see a large number of (1) \_\_\_\_\_ homes that can communicate with their owners. In fact, things that were earlier considered science fiction are already coming to life in smart cities such as Masdar in the United Arab Emirates, where an automated underground transport network fully by solar power is already running (2) \_\_\_\_\_.

With smart (3) \_\_\_\_\_, the possibility of having huge savings on electricity and power is within our reach. Sensors are being developed so that street lights of the future will switch on only when you are close by. The smart technology in (4) \_\_\_\_\_ cars will enable you to save on gas and other (5) \_\_\_\_\_ energy sources. In fact, smart cities will aim to neutralize the use of fossil fuels completely.

The cities of the future will have to adapt quickly to rapid technological (6) \_\_\_\_\_ in IT and engineering. The gap between technological leaps is going to (7) \_\_\_\_\_ over time. Technology will help bridge the current gap between the government and public in the cities of the future, given that IT and (8) \_\_\_\_\_ will make these cities more open and social.

Another thing that we can all agree on is that the cost of building in these smart cities is going to be considerable. An (9) \_\_\_\_\_ can be derived based on the latest smart city developments in India. With the (10) \_\_\_\_\_ population, the Indian Prime Minister Narendra Modi is pushing to attract investments to fuel rapid development projects in the country.

**III. Choose the word or phrase among A, B, C or D that best fits the blank space in the following passage. PREDICTIONS ABOUT THE CITIES OF THE FUTURE**

Cities are built to (1) \_\_\_\_ and prosper. Over the years, we have learned to transform our surroundings according to our needs. We have (2) \_\_\_\_ through mountains to make more land and created artificial islands to make skyscrapers. City planning, as an organized profession, has existed for less than a century. (3) \_\_\_\_, a considerable (4) \_\_\_\_ of evidence (both archaeological and historical) proves the existence of fully planned cities in ancient times. Over the years, humans have made some mistakes in terms of using an



excessive amount of resources for cities. This gives rise to the question of (5) \_\_\_\_\_ sustainable the cities of the future would be.

We might be (6) \_\_\_\_\_ at smart cities in which street lights would only switch on when you are close (7) \_\_\_\_\_ traffic light would be eliminated by smart driving. The cities of the future would try to save our resources (8) \_\_\_\_\_ than deplete them.

An example of an advanced city is Kansas. Plans are in place to make Kansas a smart futuristic city in the future. Planners are considering introducing sensors to monitor the water mains. Warning would be issued to city officials when the (9) \_\_\_\_\_ requires repair or replacement. In this way, the city would never be at risk of having broken pipes.

While the idea sounds fantastic, a large amount of rational critique has called this plan an oversold dream. Amy Glasmier is an urban planning professor at MIT. She is a smart city skeptic who believes that all the research and talk is great but gravely (10) \_\_\_\_\_.

- |                  |              |                   |               |
|------------------|--------------|-------------------|---------------|
| 1. A. find       | B. act       | C. survive        | D. celebrate  |
| 2. A. experience | B. cut       | C. decrease       | D. pollute    |
| 3. A. But        | B. Therefore | C. Although       | D. However    |
| 4. A. number     | B. amount    | C. percent        | D. static     |
| 5. A. what       | B. how       | C. when           | D. which      |
| 6. A. looked     | B. look      | C. looking        | D. looks      |
| 7. A. at         | B. by        | C. of             | D. from       |
| 8. A. rather     | B. more      | C. would          | D. less       |
| 9. A. requests   | B. research  | C. infrastructure | D. dependence |
| 10. A. consider  | B. future    | C. urban          | D. oversold   |

**IV. Read the passage, and choose the correct answer A, B, C or D for each question.**

Today's urban cities are practically bursting at the seams. According to research from the United Nations, 54 percent of the world's population lives in urban cities areas, a percentage that is expected to increase to over 66 percent by 2050. In fact, India alone is projected to add 404 million urban dwellers to its population by 2050.

This rapid growth of the urban population has caused daunting problems for city planners, such as overcrowded roads, excessive energy consumption and unemployment. Therefore, to build more sustainable cities and accommodate the growing number of residents, many city leaders are turning to the Internet of things (IoT).

The IoT has forever changed the way urban cities operate. Cities that were once detached and inaccessible are now intelligent and highly connected. From Amsterdam to Seoul, cities are launching smart city projects to help improve quality of life residents and better support the environment. According

to research from IHS Technology, there will be at least 88 smart cities globally by 2025, up from 21 in 2013.

San Francisco, for example, provides more than 100 charging stations in various locations to promote the use of hybrid and electric cars to reduce harmful greenhouse gas emissions. Copenhagen is also taking advantage of the lot to improve environmental protection and reduce road traffic by developing smart bikes equipped with sensors that generate data on air contamination and traffic congestion.

The possibilities afforded by the IoT are endless; however, designing smart cities requires comprehensive technology infrastructure that is capable of capturing and processing large amounts of data quickly and securely - which is where 4G LTE comes into play.

The future looks bright for urban cities. Soon they will be able to do things that only sci-fi enthusiasts could dream of before, like monitoring bridge conditions using intelligent sensors and conserving energy by automatically dimming street lights when no one is around.

1. Some cities which follow this trend of the new technology \_\_\_\_\_.
  - A. introduce smart bikes to escape air contamination and traffic congestion
  - B. provide charging stations in various locations for cars and bikes
  - C. make transportation more eco-friendly and more convenient
  - D. only allow the use of hybrid and electric cars to reduce pollution
2. All of the following are the advantages of the IoT EXCEPT that \_\_\_\_\_.
  - A. the Internet of Things will be applied in several cities around the world
  - B. the number of smart cities decreases but the quality is much better
  - C. cities around the world become more intelligent and connected
  - D. we may improve quality of life and better support the environment
3. Today's urban cities \_\_\_\_\_.
  - A. are in fact extremely crowded
  - B. are bursting around the world
  - C. account for 66 percent of the world's population
  - D. have more 404 million dwellers by 2050
4. The potential of the IoT includes all of the following EXCEPT that \_\_\_\_\_.
  - A. intelligent sensors can help watch and check bridge conditions carefully
  - B. energy conservation can be done by automatically controlling street lights
  - C. things that only sci-fi enthusiasts could dream of before come true
  - D. comprehensive technology infrastructure to support the IoT is endless
5. The Internet of Things allows the city planners and leaders \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. to develop the broadband Internet connectivity in urban cities
- B. to forget daunting problems, such as overcrowded roads, and unemployment
- C. to stop the rapid growth of the urban population in most cities
- D. to make cities more sustainable and provide enough accommodation

#### **D. WRITING**

##### **I. Rewrite these sentences, beginning as shown, so that the meaning stays the same.**

1. I don't buy it because I don't have enough money.

→ If I

---

2. I didn't buy it because I didn't have enough money.

→ I would

---

3. There was a test yesterday. I didn't know that, so I didn't study for it.

→ If I

---

4. I'm busy right now, so I can't help you.

→ I could

---

5. He's very thin, that's why he feels so cold.

→ If he

---

6. I didn't eat breakfast several hours ago, so I am hungry now.

→ If I

---

7. If John had played for our football team, we would not have lost the game.

→ Unless

---

8. If I won a big prize in a lottery, I'd give up my job.

→ Unless

---

9. If you don't like this one, I'll bring you another.

→ Unless

---

10. I'll only help you if you promise to try harder.

→ Unless

---

11. If she doesn't work harder, she'll lose her job.

→ She'll

---

12. You can use my car, but have to keep it carefully.

→ Provided

---

13. If the work is finished by lunch, you can go home.

→ Get

---

14. Keeping calm is the secret of passing your driving test.

→ As long as

---

15. You must work harder or you won't pass the exam.

→ You won't

---

### PART 3: TEST YOURSELF

#### I. Find the word which has a different sound in the part underlined.

- |                       |                            |                              |                              |
|-----------------------|----------------------------|------------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1. A. <u>I</u> tal    | B. Span <u>u</u> sh        | C. <u>I</u> tal <u>i</u> an  | D. <u>J</u> apan <u>e</u> se |
| 2. A. <u>s</u> ay     | B. <u>d</u> ay             | C. <u>p</u> ay               | D. <u>s</u> aw               |
| 3. A. <u>p</u> oor    | B. <u>f</u> loor           | C. <u>m</u> oor              | D. <u>b</u> oor              |
| 4. A. <u>s</u> ky     | B. <u>I</u> ndian          | C. <u>C</u> h <u>i</u> na    | D. <u>m</u> ile              |
| 5. A. <u>E</u> nglish | B. <u>e</u> mp <u>u</u> ty | C. <u>m</u> edic <u>i</u> ne | D. <u>W</u> est              |

#### II. Choose the word which has a different stress pattern from the others.

- |                   |                |                |                |
|-------------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|
| 1. A. prisoner    | B. difficult   | C. exercise    | D. disaster    |
| 2. A. improvement | B. occasion    | C. believe     | D. interest    |
| 3. A. influential | B. opportunity | C. temperament | D. expectation |
| 4. A. picture     | B. number      | C. water       | D. advice      |
| 5. A. organize    | B. embarrass   | C. discourage  | D. surrounding |

#### III. Choose the best answer A, B, C or D to complete the sentences.

1. Your brother's here, \_\_\_\_\_?

- A. is he                      B. are he                      C. isn't he                      D. aren't he
2. That was Ann on the phone, \_\_\_\_?
- A. was it                      B. was that                      C. wasn't that                      D. wasn't it
3. Tom didn't see her, \_\_\_\_?
- A. did Tom                      B. did he                      C. do Tom                      D. does he
4. Mary wasn't angry, \_\_\_\_?
- A. was she                      B. is she                      C. wasn't she                      D. was Mary
5. Susan doesn't like oysters, \_\_\_\_?
- A. did she                      B. does she                      C. doesn't she                      D. she does
6. Nothing serious will be expected in the process of building our smart city, \_\_\_\_?
- A. will it                      B. won't it                      C. will they                      D. won't they
7. Since 2007, Boston police have been using *Shotspotter*, a system that allows them to \_\_\_\_ the location of shots fired immediately.
- A. detect                      B. select                      C. collect                      D. realize
8. I'm not old enough to understand the master plan of our city by 2050, \_\_\_\_?
- A. am I                      B. am not I                      C. aren't I                      D. are you
9. By 2050, seven out of every 10 people on Earth will be a(n) \_\_\_\_.
- A. shelter                      B. urban residence                      C. city developer                      D. city dweller
10. Study after study has shown that nature improves human health and well-being, \_\_\_\_?
- A. has it                      B. hasn't it                      C. doesn't it                      D. does it
11. If someone \_\_\_\_ into the store, smile and say "May I help you?"
- A. comes                      B. came                      C. will come                      D. would come
12. If you \_\_\_\_ all of my questions, I \_\_\_\_ anything to help you.
- A. don't answer / can't do                      B. didn't answer/ won't do
- C. wouldn't answer / can't do                      D. wouldn't answer/ couldn't do
13. "Here's my phone number." - "Thanks, I \_\_\_\_ you a call if I \_\_\_\_ some help."
- A. will give / will need                      B. would give / needed
- C. give / need                      D. will give / need
14. The teacher was absent today, so class was canceled. If she \_\_\_\_ absent again tomorrow, the class \_\_\_\_ tomorrow, too.
- A. is / will cancel                      B. is / will be canceled
- C. was / would be canceled                      D. was / would cancel
15. I won't lend you this money \_\_\_\_ you promise to pay it back.

- A. in case                      B. if                              C. otherwise                      D. unless
16. Many scientists are cautiously \_\_\_\_ that the earth can feed more than nine billion people.  
A. interested                      B. pessimistic                      C. optimistic                      D. negative
17. Vancouver is often considered to be one of the most \_\_\_\_ cities in the world.  
A. fit                              B. liveable                      C. endurable                      D. suitable
18. The Saudi government is investing billions in \_\_\_\_ to support the enormous influx of people in Mecca.  
A. streets                      B. roads                      C. bridges                      D. infrastructure
19. Telecommunications and cloud computing will \_\_\_\_ transportation for moving ideas and intellectual property.  
A. change                      B. replace                      C. remove                      D. eliminate
20. \_\_\_\_ structure in Hanoi will be changed with the development of satellite areas.  
A. City                      B. Downtown                      C. Urban                      D. Town

**IV. Identify the underlined word or phrase that must be changed to make the sentence correct.**

1. If I had known English better, I would apply for that job.  
A              B                              C              D
2. His English friend told him that he would help him to learn English if he has time.  
                            A    B                              C                              D
3. If you were a fish, what kind of fish will you be?  
A              B                              C              D
4. Frank would have passed the test if he studied more often.  
                            A                              B              C                              D
5. Unless Mary could be an animal, she would like to be a dolphin.  
A                              B    C                              D
6. Unless we had more rain, our crop would grow faster.  
A              B                              C    D
7. The thief would steal money if he were rich.  
A                              B    C                              D
8. If I were to have a lot of money, I will buy that building.  
A              B                              C    D
9. If were I in your position, I would have another check.  
A              B                              C    D
10. I couldn't possibly go there if my parents gave me some money.

A            B                    C                    D

**V. Choose the word in the box to complete the text.**

*mini-urban*                    *liveable*                    *housing*                    *running*                    *together*  
*transforms*                    *urban core*                    *commute*                    *connections*                    *neighbourhoods*

Helsinki already ranks as one of the world's most (1) \_\_\_\_\_ cities, but by 2050, it may top the list. Over the next few decades, Helsinki expects to add around 250,000 new residents. But the more the population grows, the fewer cars will be on city streets as Helsinki (2) \_\_\_\_\_ itself into a network of (3) \_\_\_\_\_ that are virtually car-free.

Right now, like many cities, Helsinki has a compact (4) \_\_\_\_\_ linked to far-flung suburbs by expressways. As the city grows, each suburb will change into a (5) \_\_\_\_\_ center surrounding tram or trail stations.

Helsinki expects its busy expressways to become boulevards lined with new (6) \_\_\_\_\_, sidewalk cafes, bike lanes, and trams and buses. Residents will run everyday errands on foot or by bike; the city hopes that homes, businesses, schools, and stores will all be close enough (7) \_\_\_\_\_ that many people might not even have to (8) \_\_\_\_\_ anymore.

Helsinki is described as a green network city which has five green fingers (9) \_\_\_\_\_ through the city from sea to surrounding forest network. Most of the new development will be located on brownfield areas, and on transforming motorway corridors. The city also plans to add parks along the shoreline and add new (10) \_\_\_\_\_ to nearby islands.

**VI. Choose the word or phrase among A, B, C or D that best fits the blank space in the following passage.**

**WHAT WILL LIFE BE IN 2050?**

I find it (1) \_\_\_\_ fascinating thinking about the future, as technology is rapidly advancing and in 40 years' time, who knows what we'll be able to do with it. Scientists have recently predicted that (2) \_\_\_\_ 2050 the population of the world will be over ten billion and technology will have advanced so greatly (3) \_\_\_\_ we will have far more information about all known diseases and possibly cures), we will all be living in eco houses and will no longer face high electricity bills and we may even be able to make a holiday to Mars.

Our daily lives will definitely be filled with all kinds of new technologies that help us do the things we hate nowadays. House Robo's will be a likely feature in all homes and will help run the family home, take out the rubbish, prepare food and Hoover the house from top to bottom. Our kitchen gadgets (such as your fridge, cooker, microwave and dishwasher) will also be 'robotic' and will email or text us, the users, when a food item has gone out of date or has been used up. (4) \_\_\_\_, the fridge has a built-in camera so that when you are at the supermarket, you can log in to your fridge and (5) \_\_\_\_ what you need to stock up on.

It is predicted that by 2050 we will all have 'weekly digital health checks' in our homes, which run sensors over our bodies to check for signs of ill (6) \_\_\_\_ and any abnormalities. Conditions can instantly be (7) \_\_\_\_ by the 'virtual doctor' inside the health machine and treated immediately, and if you need a prescription - it will be ordered and sent out automatically. If the digital health check picks up on a person being overweight, they will send a signal to the (8) \_\_\_\_ house computer to (9) \_\_\_\_ their diet and book in for gym sessions. Because of all this immediate treatment, people will live far longer and won't be (10) \_\_\_\_ out by disease or forms of cancer. Medical conditions that are considered rare today will be far more known about and will be able to be cured quickly and efficiently.

1. A. absolutely      B. extintively      C. disappeared      D. absolute
2. A. in              B. at                  C. by                  D. since
3. A. that            B. what               C. which              D. when
4. A. Finally        B. Contrarily        C. Differently        D. Similarly
5. A. give            B. find                C. check              D. connect
6. A. disease        B. health             C. ruin                D. tiredness
7. A. recognizing   B. recognized        C. recognition        D. recognize
8. A. national       B. town                C. domestic            D. international
9. A. modify        B. recycle             C. conclude            D. make
10. A. blown         B. wiped              C. broke                D. went

**VII. Read the passage, and choose the correct answer A, B, C or D for each question.**

### **The Rise of Robots**

As kids, our grandparents frequently scared us by talking about how difficult life was when they were growing up. They mentioned walking miles to school in the snow, or doing hours of manual labour for little pay. Life has changed greatly since then, and it seems to get easier year by year. In fact, with the help of robots we soon might have to do much at all. But is this a good thing?

By 2030, it's estimated that robotics will be a \$10 billion business worldwide. Companies are already starting to integrate them into the workforce. The electronics manufacturer Foxconn is drawing up plans to launch a factory within the next 10 years that's completely staffed by robot workers. Meanwhile, an American company Briggo has invented a robot that serves gourmet-quality coffee to customers. With the push of a button it will crush coffee beans, measure exact quantities of water, and even wave a steam wand to ensure customers get the perfect cream on top. Unlike human baristas, it can serve multiple drinks at once and work all day and night without a break.

Robots are also invading our homes. The Rooma is a mini-robot that vacuums rooms automatically according to a schedule. The Robomow is a device that will cut the grass for you while you sit in the shade. Then there's the Nanda clocky, an alarm clock that makes sure that even the deepest sleepers get up on



time. The clock is attached to a pair of wheels, and it will randomly move around the room. Once you finally catch it, you're probably too awake to hit the snooze button. Although these early home robots are somewhat basic, they will likely become more capable as times goes on.

Although robots certainly help us to eliminate **tedious** tasks, many people are concerned about a future filled with robots. Some fear that humanity will start to decline if machines do everything for us. Others have even warned about the robot rebellion, in which robots become so smart that they may decide to turn on their masters. These ideas may seem a bit far-fetched, but there are certainly lots of questions that need to be answered before everyone opens up to the idea of a robotic future.

*Question 1.* How is Briggo's invention superior to human workers?

- A. It is more knowledgeable about coffee-making.
- B. It is better at conversation.
- C. It requires no break
- D. It can operate machinery.

*Question 2.* What would happen if you pressed the snooze button?

- A. You would have to wake up immediately
- B. The alarm clock would turn off forever
- C. The alarm would stop, but go off again soon
- D. Nothing would happen at all

*Question 3.* Which of the following is NOT true about the concerns over robots?

- A. It takes some time for people to accept robots.
- B. Robots may do some harm to humans.
- C. The idea of robotics may seem far-fetched.
- D. Robots may be dominant at the workplace.

*Question 4.* The word "**tedious**" in the last paragraph mostly means \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. boring
- B. difficult
- C. intelligent
- D. expensive

*Question 5.* What is the last paragraph mainly about?

- A. Some reasons why people don't accept robots yet.
- B. A very amusing science-fiction story about robots.
- C. How people in local communities are supporting robots.
- D. A few of the latest robots on the market today.

*Question 6.* According to the first paragraph, how is the life changed since our parents time?

- A. The education system has got much worse
- B. Things aren't as hard as they once were

- C. Children have to walk longer distance to school
- D. It hasn't changed much at all

*Question 7.* All of the following are true about robots EXCEPT that \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. they can work all day and night without break
- B. they have greater capabilities
- C. they can draw up plans to launch a story
- D. they can do boring tasks for human

*Question 8.* We can infer from the passage that \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. present domestic robots can work without any programs
- B. the communication will decline with the use of robots
- C. a robot rebellion can happen daily
- D. robotics will have been a major business by 2030

## Unit 10. HEALTHY LIFESTYLE AND LONGEVITY

### PART 1: VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR REVIEW

#### A. VOCABULARY

be attributed to	/ə'trɪbjʊ:tɪd /		quy cho
boost	/bu:st/	(v)	đẩy mạnh, nâng lên
dietary	/'daɪətəri/	(adj)	thuộc về chế độ ăn uống
immune system	/ɪ'mju:n 'sɪstəm/	(n)	hệ miễn dịch
life expectancy	/'laɪf ɪk' spektənsi/	(n)	tuổi thọ
meditation	/,medi'teɪʃn/	(n)	sự suy ngẫm, sự trầm mặc suy tưởng
natural remedy	/,nætʃrəl 'remədi/	(n.p)	phương pháp trị liệu dựa vào thiên nhiên
nutrition	/nju'trɪʃn/	(n)	sự dinh dưỡng
nutritious	/nju'trɪʃəs/	(adj)	bổ dưỡng, có chất dinh dưỡng
prescription medicine	/prɪ'skrɪpʃn - 'medsn/	(n)	thuốc do bác sĩ kê đơn
stress-free	/stres - fri:/	(adj)	không bị căng thẳng
workout	/'wɜ:kəʊt/	(n)	luyện tập thể lực

#### B. GRAMMAR REVIEW

##### I. REPORTED SPEECH WITH CONDITIONAL SENTENCES (câu điều kiện gián tiếp)

###### 1. Trường thuật câu điều kiện loại 1:

- Nếu trong câu nói trực tiếp có câu tường thuật cầu điều kiện tiếng Anh loại 1, khi chuyển sang dạng tường thuật sẽ lùi 1 thì thành câu điều kiện loại 2.

Ex: Jim said "If I catch the bus, I'll be home by six".

=> Jim said that if he caught the bus, he would be home by six.

(Jim nói rằng nếu anh ta bắt kịp xe buýt, anh ta sẽ về nhà vào lúc 6 giờ.)

Khi chuyển thành câu tường thuật phải lùi 1 thì: *catch* thành *caught*, *will be home* thành *would be home*.

## 2. Tường thuật câu điều kiện loại 2:

- Khác với câu điều kiện loại 1 trong câu tường thuật, câu điều kiện loại 2 khi chuyển từ câu nói trực tiếp sang tường thuật không cần thay đổi về thì.

Ex: My mom said to me "If you had a permit, you could find a job".

=> My mom told me that if I had a permit, I could find a job.

Mẹ tôi nói với tôi là nếu tôi có giấy phép, tôi có thể đi tìm việc. Không có sự khác biệt về thì giữa câu

nói trực tiếp và câu tường thuật.

## 3. Tường thuật câu điều kiện loại 3:

- Tương tự như tường thuật cầu điều kiện tiếng Anh loại 2, ở câu điều kiện loại 3 khi chuyển câu nói trực tiếp sang tường thuật cũng không cần thay đổi về thì.

Ex: Tom said "If Jenna had loved me, she wouldn't have left like that"

=> Tom said that if Jenna had loved him, she wouldn't have left like that.

Tom nói rằng nếu Jenna yêu anh ta, cô ấy đã không bỏ đi như vậy. Không có sự khác biệt về thì giữa câu

nói trực tiếp và câu tường thuật.

## 4. Tường thuật câu điều kiện: If + mệnh đề yêu cầu, đề nghị

Chúng ta hãy cùng xem xét ví dụ sau:

Jack said "If you have time, clean the living room"

=> Jack told me to clean the living room if I had time. (Jack bảo tôi dọn phòng khách nếu tôi rảnh.)

Hoặc Jack said "If you have time, would you clean the living room?"

=> Jack asked me to clean the living room if I had time.

(Jack hỏi tôi rằng tôi có thể dọn phòng khách không nếu tôi có thời gian rảnh?)

## 3. Tường thuật câu điều kiện: If + mệnh đề mang ý nghĩa lời khuyên

Xem xét thử ví dụ sau:

The doctor said "If you are ill, you should go to bed earlier".

- => 'The doctor advised me to go to bed earlier if I was ill.  
 => The doctor advised that if I was ill, I should go to bed earlier.  
 (Bác sĩ khuyên tôi nên đi ngủ sớm nếu tôi bị ốm.)

**Nhân xét:**

- Một khi chuyển câu trực tiếp có ý nghĩa khuyên nhủ, bạn nên lùi như tường thuật câu điều kiện tiếng Anh loại 1, 2, 3 thông thường. Nên thay động từ *said* bằng *advised* để thể hiện ý nghĩa đưa ra lời khuyên và sử dụng cấu trúc *advise somebody to do something* (khuyên một ai làm việc gì đó) hoặc cấu trúc *advise that + mệnh đề*.  
 - Tương tự như câu đề nghị, yêu cầu, trong trường hợp này chúng ta cũng chuyển mệnh đề *if* xuống cuối câu, đứng sau mệnh đề chính khi dùng *advise somebody to do something*.

**PART 2: EXERCISES**

**A. PHONETICS**

**I. Find the word which has a different sound in the part underlined.**

- |                         |                      |                       |                           |
|-------------------------|----------------------|-----------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. A. stud <u>ie</u> s  | B. busin <u>e</u> ss | C. functio <u>n</u> s | D. numbe <u>r</u> s       |
| 2. A. nur <u>s</u> e    | B. film <u>s</u>     | C. stop <u>s</u>      | D. cough <u>s</u>         |
| 3. A. lang <u>u</u> age | B. progr <u>a</u> m  | C. Eng <u>l</u> and   | D. applic <u>a</u> nt     |
| 4. A. <u>E</u> nglish   | B. Fr <u>e</u> nch   | C. Am <u>e</u> rican  | D. C <u>e</u> ltic        |
| 5. A. Ch <u>i</u> na    | B. Lat <u>i</u> n    | C. sk <u>i</u> n      | D. pronunc <u>i</u> ation |

**II. Choose the word which has a different stress pattern from the others.**

- |                 |                |            |             |
|-----------------|----------------|------------|-------------|
| 1. A. happen    | B. visit       | C. travel  | D. develop  |
| 2. A. offer     | B. listen      | C. precede | D. follow   |
| 3. A. interview | B. appropriate | C. employ  | D. describe |
| 4. A. support   | B. fascinate   | C. accept  | D. believe  |
| 5. A. inform    | B. appeal      | C. attempt | D. hesitate |

**B. VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR**

**I. Use the words given in the box to complete the sentences.**

<i>anti-ageing</i>	<i>anti-acne</i>	<i>prescription</i>	<i>immune</i>	<i>nutritious</i>
<i>expectancy</i>	<i>meditation</i>	<i>healthy</i>	<i>sugar - free</i>	<i>stress - free</i>

- My doctor said that these natural remedies can boost my \_\_\_\_\_ system.
- One of the main responsibilities of a dietitian is to promote \_\_\_\_\_ and balanced diets.
- \_\_\_\_\_ drinks are better for your teeth and general health.

4. In addition to a nutritious diet, a \_\_\_\_\_ lifestyle can boost your health and increase your life expectancy.
5. The development of effective medicines has contributed to the increase in the average life \_\_\_\_\_ in some countries.
6. An hour of \_\_\_\_\_ can help you to relieve your stress.
7. Some people believe that \_\_\_\_\_ foods can make them younger.
8. Home-made \_\_\_\_\_ masks based on fruits are completely natural and inexpensive.
9. Doctors should use more legible handwriting when giving \_\_\_\_\_.
10. Some people believe that keeping a diary of daily activities is one simple way to help you to stay \_\_\_\_\_.

**II. Choose the correct words in brackets to complete the sentences.**

1. **Antibacterial** / **Meditation** takes many forms, but its core is the ability to control the mind and quieten it down.
2. Learning is the most fundamental brain **workout** / **cholesterol-free** - and the more you do it, the more you'll benefit.
3. Research for more recent periods shows a surprising and continuing improvement in **life expectancy** / **oil-free** among those aged 80 or above.
4. Many individuals through the ages realised there was a very important link between health, exercise, fitness, meditation, intelligence and **longevity** / **anti-glare**.
5. A research suggests that Tai Chi may also slow **ageing** / **fat-free** by boosting a certain type of stem cell.
6. Bird's nest soup brings overall benefit to the **immune system** / **alcohol-free** and it gives you glowing skin.
7. Widespread gardening provides an opportunity for exercise, sunlight and **nutritious** / **consumption** food for people in Okinawa, Japan.
8. The first step in **boosting** / **continuing** Nagano's life span was a campaign to reduce salt consumption and promote a healthier diet and lifestyle.

**III. Use the word given in capitals at the end of each line to form the word that fits in the gap in the same line.**

1. In the United States, if a food contains less than 0.5 grams of fat in a \_\_\_\_\_, it can be labeled fat-free. (SERVE)
2. Try to avoid glaring on your computer from windows and lights, and use an anti-acne screen if \_\_\_\_\_. (NEED)

3. It's all about their diet and \_\_\_\_\_ that people in the Longevity Hot Spots have already found the secrets of the anti-ageing process. (LIFE)
4. Men should drink no more than four units in any one day and have at \_\_\_\_\_ two alcohol-free days a week. (LESS)
5. Studies have shown that our overuse of \_\_\_\_\_ ingredients has helped to create new resistant bacteria. (BACTERIAL)
6. Although it's impossible to control all the factors involving your skin, you can take measures to reduce the problem with the anti-glare \_\_\_\_\_ at home. (TREAT)
7. After rinsing your face, if your face feels dry, apply a(n) oil-free \_\_\_\_\_.  
(MOISTURE)
8. Perhaps the key to a stress-free \_\_\_\_\_ is not to remove the cause of the stress, but rather to improve one's response to stress. (EXIST)
9. Kidney beans, almonds, sunflower seeds and walnuts are all \_\_\_\_\_, cholesterol-free sources of protein, fiber and magnesium. (EXCELLENTLY)
10. Sugar-free foods can be helpful if you have diabetes and it is best to support overall wellness and blood sugar \_\_\_\_\_. (REGULAR)

**IV. Choose the best answer A, B, C or D to complete the sentences.**

1. She's going to the photographer's \_\_\_\_\_.
 

A. that her photograph be taken	B. to have her photograph taking
C. to have her photograph taken	D. to have taken her photograph
2. The director has promised that \_\_\_\_\_ finds a solution to this particular problem will be well awarded.
 

A. who	B. the one	C. whoever	D. anyone
--------	------------	------------	-----------
3. In order to avoid bad eating habits, you'll have to replace unhealthy fat with more \_\_\_\_\_ food.
 

A. nutrition	B. nutritional	C. nutritious	D. nutritive
--------------	----------------	---------------	--------------
4. If you're tired, even if you feel that you need to get more done, give yourself \_\_\_\_\_ to sleep.
 

A. request	B. requirement	C. permission	D. permit
------------	----------------	---------------	-----------
5. Bahrain's \_\_\_\_\_ closed up 10.09 points today at 2160.09.
 

A. stockbroker	B. stock index	C. stock exchange	D. stock option
----------------	----------------	-------------------	-----------------
6. The student failed to meet the necessary \_\_\_\_\_ for admission to the course.
 

A. fulfillments	B. qualities	C. aptitudes	D. requirements
-----------------	--------------	--------------	-----------------
7. \_\_\_\_\_ cholesterol is a byproduct of the fat that are found in animal-based foods like eggs, dairy products and meat.
 

A. Diet	B. Dietary	C. Meal	D. Food
---------	------------	---------	---------

8. After \_\_\_\_\_, people feel more refreshed and alert.  
 A. meditation      B. attention      C. determination      D. prescription
9. Come and see me when you \_\_\_\_\_ your report.  
 A. finish      B. finished      C. will finish      D. had finished
10. \_\_\_\_\_ my great surprise, almost everyone agreed \_\_\_\_\_ him.  
 A. For - to      B. At - from      C. To - with      D. In - of
11. Living to an average of 83 years old, Japan is the nation with the highest \_\_\_\_\_ in the world.  
 A. lifetime      B. lifework      C. life force      D. life expectancy
12. Make sure the \_\_\_\_\_ for your glasses or contact lens is up-to-date and adequate for computer use.  
 A. medicine      B. prescription      C. size      D. introduction
13. By cutting down trees we \_\_\_\_\_ the natural habitat of birds and animals.  
 A. hurt      B. harm      C. damage      D. injure
14. The doctor has advised \_\_\_\_\_ less coffee.  
 A. me drink      B. I will drink      C. me drinking      D. me to drink
15. Whole grains are high in fiber and contain a variety of \_\_\_\_\_ that support healthy blood sugar levels.  
 A. nutrition      B. nutrients      C. nutritionists      D. nutritious
16. Good \_\_\_\_\_, controlling calorie intake and physical activity are the only way to maintain a healthy weight.  
 A. nutrient      B. nutrition      C. malnutrition      D. nutritionists
17. The High Street is so narrow that the council have decided to \_\_\_\_\_ it.  
 A. extend      B. widen      C. increase      D. lengthen
18. I'm very glad to hear that you share my \_\_\_\_\_ in Spanish music.  
 A. enjoyment      B. listening      C. interest      D. liking
19. My own \_\_\_\_\_ for health is less paperwork and more running barefoot through the grass.  
 A. routine      B. treatment      C. medicine      D. prescription
20. The university graduates one of the highest percentages of registered dieticians and \_\_\_\_\_ in the world.  
 A. nutrition      B. nutritious      C. nutrients      D. nutritionists

### C. READING

**I. Fill each of the numbered blanks in the following passage. Use only one word in each space.**

*reach      emphasis      fraction      traits      adding*  
*purpose      active      socializing      almost      lifestyle*

#### HIGHEST LIFE EXPECTANCY IN THE WORLD

Longevity hot spots are located in regions of different countries where people commonly lead (1) \_\_\_\_\_ lives past the age of 100. A blue zone is considered to be a "longevity oasis" and the people who live there are believed to have the longest life expectancy on Earth.

The longest living women were found in Okinawa, Japan. Another blue zone was discovered in the mountains of Sardinia, Italy where even men (2) \_\_\_\_\_ the age of 100 at an amazing rate, another was discovered on the Nicoya Peninsula of Costa Rica in 2007. Only one of the blue zone is located in the United States. It was found when researchers who were staying in Loma Linda, California discovered they suffered from a (3) \_\_\_\_\_ of the diseases that commonly kill people in other parts of the United States and throughout the developed world. The final blue zone was found on an expedition to the island of Ikaria, Greece where they have 50% lower rates of heart disease, 20% less cancer, and (4) \_\_\_\_\_ zero dementia - loss of memory.

What's their secret formula for (5) \_\_\_\_\_ another 10 healthy years? Scientists focused on these longevity hot spots to answer that question and found that while it helps to have good genes, that's less than 30% of the equation. If you adopt the right (6) \_\_\_\_\_, they concluded the other 70% can be up to us. Other (7) \_\_\_\_\_ the people living in the blue zones have in common include less stress and more (8) \_\_\_\_\_, strong (9) \_\_\_\_\_ on family, a fresh natural plant based diet, very little red meat and daily exercise. Leading their lives with a sense of (10) \_\_\_\_\_ was a big factor. It insures they look forward to getting up in the morning,

**II. Choose the word or phrase among A, B, C or D that best fits the blank space in the following passage.**

In China, it is believed that tai chi can delay ageing and prolong life, increase flexibility, strengthen muscles and tendons, and aid in the treatment of heart disease, high blood (1) \_\_\_\_\_, arthritis, skin diseases, depression, cancer, and many other (2) \_\_\_\_\_.

(3) \_\_\_\_\_ of the research on tai chi has been done in older individuals in the area of balance and fall prevention. This area of (4) \_\_\_\_\_ is important because fall-related injuries are the leading cause of death from injury and disability among older adults. Because tai chi movements are slow and deliberate (5) \_\_\_\_\_ shifts of body weight from one leg to the other in (6) \_\_\_\_\_ with upper body movements, it challenges balance and many have long assumed it helps improve balance and reduce fall frequency.

In a similar tai chi study of older adults, 54% of the subjects who practised tai chi attributed their improved (7) \_\_\_\_\_ of confidence to improved balance. One study looked at adults in their 60s and 70s who practised tai chi three times a week for 12 weeks (60-minute classes). After (8) \_\_\_\_\_ six weeks, statistically significant improvements were observed in balance, muscular strength, endurance, and flexibility measures. Improvements in each of these areas increased (9) \_\_\_\_\_ after another 12 weeks.

The demands of living are stressful for adults of all ages. Although one cannot directly point to studies showing a reduction in stress from practising tai chi, the breathing, movement, and mental



concentration required of individuals who practise tai chi may be just the distraction you need from your hectic (10) \_\_\_\_\_.

1. A. pressure            B. ceremony            C. request            D. telling
2. A. bride            B. regulations            C. diseases            D. notes
3. A. Almost            B. Most            C. The most            D. Mostly
4. A. research            B. boxe            C. present            D. war
5. A. through            B. for            C. in            D. with
6. A. respect            B. coordination            C. stopping            D. refusal
7. A. sense            B. common            C. marriage            D. divorce
8. A. then            B. as            C. just            D. that
9. A. father            B. further            C. farthest            D. more
10. A. troubles            B. problems            C. lifestyle            D. rounds

### III. Read the passage and choose the best answer.

Psychologists have debated a long time about whether a child's upbringing can give it the ability to do outstandingly well. Some think that it is impossible to develop genius and say that it is simply something a person is born with. **Others**, however, argue that the potential for great achievement can be developed. The truth lies somewhere between these two extremes.

It seems very obvious that being born with the right qualities from gifted parents will increase a child's ability to do well. However, this ability will be fully realized only with the right upbringing and opportunities. As one psychologist says, "To have a fast car, you need both a good engine and fuel".

Scientists have recently assessed intelligence, achievement, and ability in 50 sets of identical twins that were separated shortly after birth and brought up by different parents. They found that achievement was based on intelligence, and later influenced by the child's environment. One case involving very intelligent twins was quoted. One of the twins received a normal upbringing, and performed well. The other twin, however, was brought up by extremely supportive parents and given every possible opportunity to develop its abilities. That twin, though starting out with the same degree of intelligence as the other, performed even better. This case reflects the general principle of intelligence and ability. The more favorable the environment, the more a child's intelligence and ability are developed. However, there is no link between intelligence and the socioeconomic level of a child's family. In other words, it does not matter how poor or how rich a family is, as this does not affect intelligence.

Gifted people cannot be created by supportive parents, but they can be developed by them. One professor of music said that outstanding musicians usually started two or three years earlier than ordinary performers, often because their parents had recognized their ability. These musicians then needed at least

ten years' hard work and training in order to reach the level they were capable of attaining. People who want to have very gifted children are given the following advice:

- Marry an intelligent person.
- Allow children to follow their own interests rather than the interests of the parents.
- Start a child's education early but avoid pushing the child too hard.
- Encourage children to play, for example, playing with musical instruments is essential for a child who wants to become an outstanding musician.

*Question 1:* The upbringing of highly intelligent children requires \_\_\_\_.

- A. an expensive education
- B. good musical instruments
- C. parental support and encouragement
- D. wealthy and loving parents

*Question 2:* The word "**others**" used in the first paragraph refers to \_\_\_\_.

- A. other people
- B. other scientists
- C. other children
- D. other geniuses

*Question 3:* When scientists studied intelligence and ability in twins, they found that \_\_\_\_.

- A. ability depends mainly on intelligence and achievement
- B. intelligence and development are irrelevant to ability
- C. ability depends both on intelligence and on environment
- D. different twins generally have different levels of ability

*Question 4:* Scientists chose twins for their study because \_\_\_\_.

- A. each twin has the same environment as his/her twin
- B. they are born into the same family, hence the same upbringing
- C. they have the same economic background and hence the same opportunities
- D. they have the same genetic background, usually with similar intelligence

*Question 5:* How were great musicians different from ordinary musicians in their development?

- A. Their ability was realized at an early stage and then nurtured.
- B. They practice playing their instruments for many years.
- C. They concentrated on music to the exclusion of other areas.
- D. They were exceptionally intelligent and artistic.

*Question 6:* The remark: "To have a fast car, you need both a good engine and fuel." in the passage means that in order to become a genius \_\_\_\_.

- A. you need to have good health and good nourishment
- B. you need intelligence and you need to develop it
- C. you should try to move quickly and efficiently
- D. you must nourish your brain and train your muscles hard

Question 7: All of the following statements are true EXCEPT \_\_\_\_.

- A. a child's intelligence is influenced by that of his/her parents
- B. to become successful, a child needs both native intelligence and development
- C. studying different twins is a useful scientific procedure
- D. educational development depends completely on economic well-being.

**D. WRITING**

**I. Change the following sentences to Indirect speech.**

1. Mark said, "I went camping 5 days ago."

---

2. "If Brain doesn't train harder, I won't select him for the team" said the manager.

---

3. "Our correspondent in Paris sent this report some days ago" said the editor in-chief.

---

4. "How long have you been waiting here?" the girl asked me.

---

5. "Do not write on the wall" said the teacher to the boys.

---

6. "Take your place in the queue" the nurse said to the old man.

---

7. "How many jobs have you had since you left school?" the interviewer asked Jack.

---

8. "Why didn't you report the incident to the police last week?" the officer asked the frightened witness.

---

9. "Why hasn't Peter phoned?" she wondered.

---

10. "If I were you, I wouldn't trust Peter" she told John.

---

**II. Change the following sentences to Indirect speech.**

1. "I'll take you to the zoo tomorrow" my mother said to me.

---

2. Jane said to Bill "When do you expect to finish your assignment?"

---

3. The man said to the boy "Can you show me the way to the bank?"

---

4. The man asked the postman "Are there any letters for me today?"

---

5. Henry said to the librarian "How many books can I borrow at a time?"

---

6. John asked his friend "How did you manage to know my telephone number?"

---

7. Rose said "I was just leaving for the office"

---

8. Ann asked her brother "What are you planning to do tomorrow?"

---

9. She asked her boyfriend "Is it true that your father fought in the last war?"

---

10. He said "I don't understand why she has refused to join us on the trip"

---

**III. Change the following sentences to Indirect speech.**

1. Tom said to me "If I have spare time, I will go fishing with you".

---

2. The teacher told us "If it doesn't rain tomorrow, we can go for a picnic."

---

3. "Unless you study harder, you will fail the exam" said his parents.

---

4. "If she goes to the party, she will have a lot of fun." said Peter.

---

5. "If you need help, I will be willing to help you with the difficult exercises" my sister said.

---

6. Linda said "I would have come to the party if I hadn't been so busy last week."

---

7. Tom told me "If I were you, I would look for another job."

---

8. My friend said to me "What would you do if someone gave you a million pounds?"

---

9. The gardener said "If I didn't water these plants yesterday, they could die."

---

10. The doctor said to the patient "You won't feel better unless you takes these medicine."

---

### PART 3: TEST YOURSELF

#### I. Find the word which has a different sound in the part underlined.

1. A. recognize      B. medium      C. Japanese      D. seat
2. A. spontaneous      B. official      C. ontrol      D. work
3. A. carry      B. battle      C. day      D. hat
4. A. near      B. bear      C. hear      D. dear
5. A. said      B. brain      C. drain      D. train

#### II. Choose the word which has a different stress pattern from the others.

1. A. swallow      B. survive      C. digest      D. finish
2. A. product      B. satisfy      C. pleasure      D. however
3. A. happiness      B. rewrite      C. eject      D. oblige
4. A. compare      B. compose      C. company      D. consist
5. A. manage      B. recognize      C. argue      D. discriminate

#### III. Choose the best answer A, B, C or D to complete the sentences.

1. The government proposes to increase the excise \_\_\_\_ on tobacco  
A. fee      B. money      C. obligation      D. duty
2. When I was a boy we had no \_\_\_\_ in this village.  
A. electric      B. electricity      C. electrify      D. electrical
3. Baking soda is considered the best home \_\_\_\_ for acne as it soothes itching and inflammation around spots.  
A. dealing      B. medicine      C. remedy      D. substance
4. Most \_\_\_\_ is caused by wishing things that you are unable to achieve them right now.  
A. disease      B. injury      C. stress      D. wound
5. Ann could not speak Chinese and \_\_\_\_ could John.  
A. either      B. also      C. neither      D. so
6. By tomorrow morning everything \_\_\_\_ set up in time for the performance.  
A. will have been      B. will be      C. had already been      D. have already been

7. By paying attention to your hunger signals and switching to healthy snacks, you can \_\_\_\_ nutrition, control cravings, and lose weight.  
 A. succeed                      B. boost                      C. stimulate                      D. request
8. Reducing saturated fat is the single most important \_\_\_\_ change you can make to cut blood cholesterol.  
 A. life                      B. food                      C. menu                      D. dietary
9. He was very ashamed \_\_\_\_ his friend's bad manner.  
 A. at                      B. of                      C. on                      D. through
10. HIV is listed as one of the most life-threatening \_\_\_\_ diseases.  
 A. antibiotics                      B. infectious                      C. nutritious                      D. check-up
11. The acid in nonstick pans is associated with birth and developmental defects, \_\_\_\_ system problems, and cancer.  
 A. immune                      B. immunity                      C. immunization                      D. immunized
12. Whey protein may account for many of the health benefits \_\_\_\_ to dairy products.  
 A. believed                      B. attributed                      C. resulted                      D. dietary
13. Not only my son but also I \_\_\_\_ tired from walking so far.  
 A. is                      B. are                      C. am                      D. were
14. Many doctors recommend \_\_\_\_ as a way to reduce stress.  
 A. medication                      B. thinking                      C. silence                      D. calmness
15. Chocolate and cakes cause our blood sugar to rise and give us a quick \_\_\_\_.  
 A. boost                      B. power                      C. action                      D. success
16. They all laughed because the film was very \_\_\_\_.  
 A. amuse                      B. amusement                      C. amused                      D. amusing
17. 'Which of these two men is Chinese?' – ' \_\_\_\_ is.'  
 A. Both of them                      B. All of them                      C. Neither of them                      D. None of them
18. A \_\_\_\_ makes the body more efficient and enhances the body's ability to respond to stress.  
 A. fitness                      B. morning exercise                      C. training                      D. workout
19. Tobacco not only affects you and the people around you, but can \_\_\_\_ to serious health conditions including lung and heart disease.  
 A. go                      B. influence                      C. lead                      D. point
20. The committee \_\_\_\_ among themselves for hours.  
 A has been arguing    B. have been arguing                      C. has been argued    D. have been argued

**IV. Put the correct preposition for the sentences below.**

*immune                      dietary                      nutritious                      expectancy*

*boost*

*remedies*

*prescription*

*attributed*

1. Obese patients should strictly follow health experts' \_\_\_\_\_.
2. Science has shown that many types of chronic diseases are \_\_\_\_\_ to people's bad eating habits.
3. My doctor gave me a \_\_\_\_\_ for antibiotics.
4. You can \_\_\_\_\_ your health by leading a stress-free life, eating low-cholesterol food and exercising every day.
5. In general, Japanese people having higher life \_\_\_\_\_ than people in other countries because their diet is rich in fish.
6. Lack of exercise and fatty food consumption can weaken our \_\_\_\_\_ system.
7. Honey and lemon juice are often used as natural \_\_\_\_\_ for coughs.
8. School canteens should provide only highly \_\_\_\_\_ meals to young children.

**V. Choose the word in the box to complete the text.**

*conscious*

*well-being*

*endorphins*

*balance*

*well-balanced*

*obligations*

*dealing*

*refers*

*Take*

*properly*

Having a healthy lifestyle is not just about eating healthily and exercising. It often (1)

\_\_\_\_\_ to having a balance between work and life.

To start with, make sure you get plenty of sleep. Some research suggests that teenagers need more sleep than adults, however, it's often the case that they get less than they need. With homework and social (2) \_\_\_\_\_, you can be staying up late still have to get up early to get to classes, work or other activities. To function (3) \_\_\_\_\_, your body and mind need a minimum of eight hours of sleep each night.

Eating a (4) \_\_\_\_\_ diet can sound much easier than it is. A lot of people are really (5) \_\_\_\_\_ about what they eat, and try and make healthy choices. If you think you have too much junk food and want to make some changes to your diet, don't try and eliminate all junk food. You should drink plenty of water, eat a balance of protein, whole grains, fruit and vegetables daily, and don't skip breakfast - eat something for breakfast every day.

Exercising regularly is part of having a healthy lifestyle. Physical activity helps build a strong body and mind. Doing physical activity releases (6) \_\_\_\_\_, which are a chemical your body produces, which gives you a good feeling. Physical activity is also an effective way to manage moods and is a really good lifestyle choice to improve your overall (7) \_\_\_\_\_.

Having friends and family that you can confide in is really important. To be a healthy person, you need to have people around you that you can talk to about what's happening to you, rather than (8)

\_\_\_\_\_ with them alone.

Another important part of having a healthy lifestyle is remembering to "play". Just taking time to laugh, have fun and being around people who make you feel good is part of having (9) \_\_\_\_\_ in your life.

(10) \_\_\_\_\_ time to learn about what makes you feel good and remember to include some of those things in your day.

**VI. Choose the word or phrase among A, B, C or D that best fits the blank space in the following passage.**

### HEALTH BENEFITS OF YOGA

Yoga is a healthy lifestyle. One of the (1) \_\_\_\_\_ of yoga is that you can choose a yoga style that is suitable for your lifestyle, such as hot yoga, power yoga, relaxation yoga, etc. If you are a yoga beginner, Hatha Yoga, (2) \_\_\_\_\_ focuses on basic postures at a comfortable pace, would be great for you. If you want to increase (3) \_\_\_\_\_ through using more of your own body's resistance, Power Yoga may be right for you. Whether you prefer you're at home, in a available to suit your goals and needs.

Improved (4) \_\_\_\_\_ is one of the first and most obvious benefits of yoga. During your first class, you probably won't be able to touch your toes. (5) \_\_\_\_\_ if you stick with it, you'll notice a gradual loosening, and eventually, seemingly impossible poses will become possible. Each of the yoga poses (6) \_\_\_\_\_ to (7) \_\_\_\_\_ the muscles around the spine, the very center of your body, which is the core from which everything else operates. When the core is working properly, posture is improved, thus (8) \_\_\_\_\_ back, shoulder, and neck pain.

Strong muscles do more than look good. They also protect us from conditions like arthritis and back pain, and help prevent falls in elderly people. And when you build strength through yoga, you balance it with flexibility. If you just went to the gym and lifted weights, you might build strength at the (9) \_\_\_\_\_ of flexibility.

Yoga gets your blood flowing. More specifically, the relaxation exercises you learn in yoga can help your circulation, especially in your hands and feet. Yoga also gets more oxygen to your cells, which function better as a result. Twisting poses are thought to wring out venous blood from internal organs and allow oxygenated blood to flow in once the twist is related.

Many studies found that a consistent yoga practice improved (10) \_\_\_\_\_ and led to greater levels of happiness and better immune function.

- |                     |           |             |                |
|---------------------|-----------|-------------|----------------|
| 1. A. disadvantages | B. ritual | C. benefits | D. differences |
| 2. A. that          | B. which  | C. who      | D. when        |



- |                   |             |                |               |
|-------------------|-------------|----------------|---------------|
| 3. A strong       | B. strongly | C. strengthen  | D. strength   |
| 4. A. flexibility | B. shell    | C. union       | D. gratitude  |
| 5. A. As          | B. But      | C. Even        | D. On         |
| 6. A. was built   | B. builds   | C. is built    | D. are built  |
| 7. A. weaken      | B. release  | C. increase    | D. reinforce  |
| 8. A. alleviating | B. ceremony | C. approaching | D. creation   |
| 9. A. life        | B. depth    | C. expense     | D. death      |
| 10. A. trouble    | B. problem  | C. confliction | D. depression |

**VII. Read a text about common wedding rituals in the USA and answer the questions that follow.**

Acupuncture involves the insertion of very thin needles through the patient's skin at specific points on the body, and the needles are inserted to various depths. The medical community is not in conclusive agreement about how acupuncture works scientifically. However, we know that it does have some therapeutic benefits, including pain relief.

According to WHO, acupuncture is effective for treating 28 conditions, while evidence indicates it may have an effective therapeutic value for many more. People with tension, headaches or migraines may find acupuncture to be very effective in alleviating their symptoms. Another study found that twice weekly acupuncture treatments relieve debilitating symptoms of xerostomia - severe dry mouth - among patients treated with head and neck cancer.

Traditional Chinese medicine explains that health is the result of a harmonious balance of the complementary extremes of *yin* and *yang* of the life force known as *chi* or *qi*. *Qi* is said to flow through pathways in the human body. Through 350 acupuncture points in the body, these pathways and energy flows may be accessed. Illness is said to be the consequence of an imbalance of the forces. If needles are inserted into these points with appropriate combinations, it is said that the energy flow can be brought back into proper balance.

In Western societies and several other parts of the world, acupuncture is explained, including concepts of neuroscience. Acupuncture points are seen by Western practitioners as places where nerves, muscles and connective tissue can be stimulated. Acupuncture practitioners say that the stimulation increases blood flow while at the same time **triggering** the activity of our own body's natural painkillers.

- The word "**triggering**" in paragraph 4 is closest in meaning to \_\_\_\_\_.
 

A. making something happen suddenly	B. making something develop very quickly
C. causing a device to start operating	D. causing something to explore
- With the practice of acupuncture, it is believed that \_\_\_\_\_.
 

A. patients can get proper balance between yin and yang
B. illness causes the imbalance of qi throughout the body



17. A. climate            B. liveable            C. city            D. discussion  
 18. A. solar            B. infrastructure            C. designer            D. focus  
 19. A. upgraded            B. consumption            C. urban            D. unbelievable  
 20. A. dweller            B. detect            C. technology            D. eco-friendly

**II. Choose the word which has a different stress pattern from the others.**

1. A. diploma            B. doctorate            C. internship            D. scholarship  
 2. A. undergraduate            B. university            C. baccalaureate            D. accommodation  
 3. A. eligible            B. kindergarten            C. magnificent            D. secondary  
 4. A. coordinator            B. opportunity            C. international            D. similarity  
 5. A. abundant            B. masterpiece            C. demolish            D. mosaic  
 6. A. mandatory            B. magnificent            C. harmonious            D. imperial  
 7. A. picturesque            B. heritage            C. emperor            D. dynasty  
 8. A. geological            B. archaeologist            C. irresponsible            D. itinerary  
 9. A. doctorate            B. dynasty            C. breathtaking            D. acknowledge  
 10. A. ecological            B. environmental            C. archaeological            D. analytical  
 11. A. pessimistic            B. optimistic            C. overcrowded            D. innovative  
 12. A. residential            B. environment            C. insoluble            D. enjoyable  
 13. A. infrastructure            B. sustainable            C. inhabitant            D. renewable  
 14. A. generate            B. understand            C. innovate            D. maximize  
 15. A. meditation            B. longevity            C. expectancy            D. cholesterol  
 16. A. essential            B. survival            C. nutrition            D. vegetable  
 17. A. acupuncture            B. supermarket            C. necessary            D. simultaneous  
 18. A. dietary            B. variety            C. obesity            D. bacteria  
 19. A. remedy            B. dramatic            C. quality            D. paradise  
 20. A. longevity            B. expectancy            C. sustainable            D. individual

**III. Choose the best one (A, B, C or D) to complete the sentence or replace the underlined word.**

1. Ha Long Bay is one of the most \_\_\_\_ UNESCO World Heritage Sites in Vietnam.  
 A. surprising            B. shocking            C. breathing            D. breathtaking
2. So far, global warming and its effects \_\_\_\_ the health of older people and children.  
 A. has threaten            B. had been threatening            C. are threatening            D. have been threatening
3. The reduction of the protective ozone layer \_\_\_\_ many more cases of skin cancer.  
 A. caused            B. causes            C. has caused            D. is caused

4. Hue Imperial Citadel is the home of Vietnam's last royal dynasty \_\_\_\_ our country from 1802 to 1945.  
A. to ruled            B. being ruled            C. to rule            D. ruled
5. A cable car system gives poor slum \_\_\_\_ better access to jobs.  
A. citizens            B. dwellers            C. villagers            D. residences
6. Helsinki is a model for the future of \_\_\_\_ smart growth.  
A. country            B. rural            C. urban            D. town
7. A nation with a strong \_\_\_\_ would be successful in creating numerous smart cities.  
A. transportation            B. transfer            C. service            D. infrastructure
8. The student failed to meet the necessary \_\_\_\_ for admission to the course.  
A. fulfillments            B. qualities            C. aptitudes            D. requirements
9. He got an excellent grade in his examination \_\_\_\_ the fact that he had not worked particularly hard.  
A. on account of            B. because of            C. in spite of            D. although
10. Despite playing under strength, the village team \_\_\_\_ beat the rivals.  
A. could            B. were able to            C. couldn't            D. weren't able to
11. The existence of the planet Pluto was not \_\_\_\_ until this century.  
A. invented            B. explored            C. discovered            D. identified
12. John never comes to class on time and \_\_\_\_.  
A. neither doesn't Peter            B. neither does Peter            C. so does Peter            D. so doesn't Peter
13. She was \_\_\_\_ in her driving test. What a pity for her!  
A. successful            B. successive            C. unsuccessful            D. success
14. Neither my brothers nor I \_\_\_\_ interested in playing sports.  
A. are            B. am            C. have            D. has
15. Is it hard to get around because you don't have a car? Not since I got used \_\_\_\_ the bus.  
A. with riding            B. to ride            C. riding            D. to riding
16. The \_\_\_\_ at the football match became violent when their team lost.  
A. spectators            B. groups            C. observers            D. customers
17. I didn't know his address. \_\_\_\_, I would have written to him.  
A. Because            B. Therefore            C. Consequently            D. Otherwise
18. I disapproved \_\_\_\_ people smoking in public places.  
A. with            B. of            C. at            D. on
19. He had to leave early, \_\_\_\_ he?

- A. mustn't                      B. didn't                      C. hasn't                      D. shouldn't
20. When I leave the school next year I \_\_\_\_\_ here for ten years.  
A. teach                      B. have taught                      C. will teach                      D. will have taught
21. She's disappointed because her son's low test scores prevented \_\_\_\_\_ to the university.  
A. to admit him                      B. him to admit  
C. him from being admitted                      D. him from admitting
22. The teacher \_\_\_\_\_ has not yet arrived.  
A. who I wrote to you                      B. I wrote to you about him  
C. whom I wrote to you about him                      D. I wrote to you about
23. If only we \_\_\_\_\_ more time, we could have seen more of the country.  
A. had                      B. have had                      C. had had                      D. would have had
24. It's high time you \_\_\_\_\_ to study seriously.  
A. begin                      B. began                      C. will begin                      D. would begin
25. If she hadn't gone out in the rain without a raincoat, she \_\_\_\_\_ in bed because of catching a cold now.  
A. weren't                      B. hadn't been                      C. isn't                      D. wouldn't be
26. The government has decided to send more \_\_\_\_\_ to Saharan countries.  
A. charity                      B. aid                      C. collections                      D. donations
27. It turned out that we \_\_\_\_\_ rushed to the airport as the plane was delayed by several hours.  
A. hadn't                      B. should have                      C. needn't have                      D. mustn't
28. If you're \_\_\_\_\_ for further education funding from the government, find out what funding is available to you.  
A. illegal                      B. capable                      C. eligible                      D. affordable
29. UK further education \_\_\_\_\_ are recognized and respected by employers and academics worldwide.  
A. qualification                      B. experiences                      C. limitations                      D. possibilities
30. A wide range of \_\_\_\_\_ and living costs make study in the United States financially possible for many international students.  
A. fee                      B. money                      C. fare                      D. tuition
31. The style of UK further education is \_\_\_\_\_, involving high levels of personal contact and support from tutors.  
A. unique                      B. only                      C. single                      D. individual
32. Warmer conditions will probably lead to more evaporation and rain overall, but individual regions will \_\_\_\_\_, some becoming wetter and others dryer.  
A. change                      B. claim                      C. vary                      D. transfer



**V. Fill in the blank with a suitable word.****PASSAGE A**

*eliminate      antioxidants      uncomfortable      sensitive      approximately*  
*dehydrate      sufficient      routine      maintain      recommended*

**HOW TO TAKE CARE OF YOUR BODY SKIN**

To keep your skin healthy, do not go out in the sun without protection. It is also highly (1) \_\_\_\_\_ to stay out of the sun during the hottest hours of the day. It is important to use gentle, soap-free skincare products for your cleansing (2) \_\_\_\_\_. If you use products that are too harsh, your skin can become extremely dry and feel very (3) \_\_\_\_\_.

A shower is better for your skin than a bath, which tends do (4) \_\_\_\_\_ the skin. Make sure that the water is lukewarm, rather than hot. Before you get out of the shower, rinse your entire body off really well to (5) \_\_\_\_\_ all traces of your cleansing product. Then, rapidly dry your skin by gently patting your legs, chest, arms, etc. with your towel.

Have you noticed that your skin becomes particularly (6) \_\_\_\_\_ during the winter months? In fact, the cold weather, as well as the wind and sun, tend to dry out the skin. As soon as the temperature begins to drop, make sure that you dress warmly, and do not forget to protect your hands.

For beautiful skin, your body requires (7) \_\_\_\_\_ amounts of liquid. Make sure that you drink enough water, (8) \_\_\_\_\_ 8 glasses per day. A healthy, well-balanced diet is not only good for your body, but for your skin as well. Each day, you should eat fruits and vegetables, which are rich in (9) \_\_\_\_\_. This will help you (10) \_\_\_\_\_ beautiful, healthy skin. If you get enough sleep, your skin will look healthy.

**PASSAGE B**

*promote      practised      lifestyles      thumb      reduces*  
*organs      essential      medicine      stability      transport*

Foot massage has been (1) \_\_\_\_\_ in different cultures for years to promote health and well-being. Also, it has been a valuable part of complementary and alternative (2) \_\_\_\_\_.

Reflexology is an ancient healing practice based on the principle that there are reflex points on the feet that correspond to the body's different (3) \_\_\_\_\_ and glands. These points are located on the soles, ankles, toes and upper part of the foot. In reflexology, pressure is applied to special areas on the feet with specific (4) \_\_\_\_\_, finger or hand techniques.

Stimulating and applying pressure to these reflexes on the feet is definitely pleasurable, but at the time it helps (5) \_\_\_\_\_ good health.

Due to urban (6) \_\_\_\_\_, most of us do not use the muscles of our feet properly. Also, improper footwear like tight shoes hamper normal circulation in the feet. You can improve your blood circulation with 10 minutes of daily foot massage. This in turn will help (7) \_\_\_\_\_ oxygen to the body's cells, which is (8) \_\_\_\_\_ for overall health.

Certain points on the feet are helpful in alleviating symptoms of depression. For instance, the spot in the center of the big toe, the spot at the center of the ball of your foot are associated with emotional (9) \_\_\_\_\_ and mental health.

One easy way to keep your feet healthy and free from all kinds of foot problem is a regular foot massage. It helps stimulate the muscles around your feet, lessens stiffness and even (10) \_\_\_\_\_ pain in the ankles or the heels.

**VI. Read the passage below and decide which answer A, B, C or D fits each numbered gap.**

### **PASSAGE A**

#### **GLOBAL WARMING**

Few people now realize the reality of global warming and its effects on the world's climate. Many scientists (1) \_\_\_\_ the blame for recent natural disasters on the increases (2) \_\_\_\_ the world's temperature and are convinced that, more than ever before, the Earth is at (3) \_\_\_\_ from the forces of the wind, rain and sun. According to them, global warming is making extreme weather events, (4) \_\_\_\_ as hurricanes and droughts, even more (5) \_\_\_\_ and causing sea levels all around the world to (6) \_\_\_\_.

Environment groups are putting (7) \_\_\_\_ on governments to take action to reduce the amount of carbon dioxide which is given (8) \_\_\_\_ by factories and power plants, thus attacking the problem at its source. They are in (9) \_\_\_\_ more money being spent on research into solar, wind, and wave devices, which could then replace existing power (10) \_\_\_\_ . It looks like global warming is here stay.

- |                  |               |             |                |
|------------------|---------------|-------------|----------------|
| 1. A. push       | B. put        | C. pull     | D. tend        |
| 2. A. in         | B. for        | C. by       | D. next to     |
| 3. A. endanger   | B. harmful    | C. risk     | D. threat      |
| 4. A. so         | B. well       | C. such     | D. even        |
| 5. A. bright     | B. strict     | C. hardly   | D. severe      |
| 6. A. raise      | B. lift       | C. rise     | D. arise       |
| 7. A. pressure   | B. force      | C. pression | D. encourage   |
| 8. A. off        | B. down       | C. over     | D. away        |
| 9. A. request    | B. interested | C. belief   | D. favour      |
| 10. A. companies | B. factories  | C. stations | D. generations |



## PASSAGE B

The Huong Son Complex of Natural Beauty and Historical Monuments is situated (1) \_\_\_\_\_ a limestone mountain range, some 60 kilometres southwest of Hanoi. This mountain range was (2) \_\_\_\_\_ more than 200 million years ago. The Houg Son Complex area is a natural habitat of many rare and valuable species of tropical fauna and flora (3) \_\_\_\_\_ of primitive men in North Vietnam. (4) \_\_\_\_\_ of caves are archaeological (5) \_\_\_\_\_, belonging to the Hoa Binh Culture and dating back to over 10,000 years.

In the far past, taking (6) \_\_\_\_\_ of the local natural beauty, ancient Viet people built a system of hundreds of Buddhist pagodas and temples in caves on mountain sides and streams. The most (7) \_\_\_\_\_ of those is the Houg Tich Cave, which is also the most beautiful natural cave in the country. In this area, the Huong Pagoda Festival, which is held annually, lasts for one month in spring with the (8) \_\_\_\_\_ of hundreds of thousands of people, both the Vietnamese and foreigners. The Huong Son Complex (9) \_\_\_\_\_ three groups of pagodas, temples and caves linked with (10) \_\_\_\_\_ by waterways.

- |                    |                |                 |                  |
|--------------------|----------------|-----------------|------------------|
| 1. A. on           | B. about       | C. under        | D. above         |
| 2. A. began        | B. existed     | C. formed       | D. made          |
| 3. A. but also     | B. as well as  | C. due to       | D. according     |
| 4. A. Amounts      | B. A number    | C. The number   | D. A great deal  |
| 5. A. parts        | B. regions     | C. sections     | D. sites         |
| 6. A. advantage    | B. benefit     | C. support      | D. loan          |
| 7. A. especially   | B. spectacular | C. surprising   | D. unavailable   |
| 8. A. presence     | B. gathering   | C. contribution | D. participation |
| 9. A. maintain     | B. contains    | C. comprises    | D. makes up      |
| 10. A. one another | B. others      | C. an other     | D. themselves    |

**VII. Read the passage, and choose the correct answer A, B, C or D for each question.**

## PASSAGE A

Successful students often do the followings while studying. First, they have an overview before reading. Next, they look for important information and pay greater attention to it (which often needs jumping forward or backward to process information). They also relate important points to one another. Also, they activate and use their **prior** knowledge. When they realize that their understanding is not good, they do not wait to change strategies. Last, they can monitor understanding and take action to correct or “fix up” mistakes in comprehension.

**Conversely**, students with low academic achievement often demonstrate ineffective study skills. They tend to assume a passive role in learning and rely on others (e.g., teachers, parents) to monitor their studying, for example, low-achieving students often do not monitor their understanding of content; they may not be aware of the purpose of studying; and they show little evidence of looking back, or employing

"fix up strategies to fix understanding problems. Students who struggle with learning new information seem to be unaware that they must exert effort beyond simply reading the content to understand and remember it. Children with learning disabilities do not plan and judge the quality of their studying. Their studying may be disorganized. Students with learning problems face challenges with personal organization as well. They often have difficulty keeping track of materials and assignments, following directions, and completing work on time. Unlike good students who employ a variety of study skills in a flexible yet purposeful manner, low-achieving students use a restricted range of study skills. **They** cannot explain why good study strategies are important for learning; and they tend to use the same, often ineffective study approach for all learning tasks, ignoring task content, structure or difficulty.

*Question 1.* What is the topic of the passage?

- A. Successful and low-academic achieving students
- B. Successful learners and their learning strategies
- C. Study skills for high school students
- D. Effective and ineffective ways of learning

*Question 2.* The word "**prior**" in the first paragraph is closest meaning to \_\_\_\_.

- A. important
- B. earlier
- C. forward
- D. good

*Question 3.* Which of the following could best replace the word "**Conversely**" in paragraph 2?

- A. On the contrary
- B. In contrast
- C. On the other hand
- D. all are correct

*Question 4.* According to the passage, what can be learnt about passive students?

- A. They depend on other people to organize their learning
- B. They are slow in their studying
- C. They monitor their understanding
- D. They know the purpose of studying

*Question 5.* Which of the followings is NOT an evidence of monitoring studying?

- A. Being aware of the purpose of studying
- B. Monitoring their understanding of content
- C. Fixing up mistakes in understanding
- D. Looking at their backs

*Question 6.* According to the passage, to learn new information, low-achieving students do NOT \_\_\_\_.

- A. just understand it
- B. relate it to what they have known
- C. simply remember it
- D. read it

*Question 7.* In compared with low-achieving students, successful students use \_\_\_\_.

- A. aimless study techniques
- B. various study skills
- C. restricted strategies
- D. inflexible study ways

*Question 8.* The underlined pronoun "**They**" in the last sentence refers \_\_\_\_.

- A. study strategies
- C. low-achieving students

- B. study skills
- D. good studiers

**PASSAGE B**

**EDUCATION IN THE FUTURE**

Education is another area of social life in which information technology is changing the way we communicate. Today's college students may not simply sit in a lecture or a library to learn about their field. Through their computers and the wonders of virtual reality they can participate in lifelike simulated experiences. Consider the following scenario of the future of education made possible through developments in information technology.

For children over the age of 10, daily attendance at schools is not compulsory. Some of the older children attend school only once or twice weekly to get tutorial support or instruction from a teacher. For the most part, pupils are **encouraged** to work online from home. Students must complete a minimum number of study hours per year; however, **they** may make up these hours by studying at home at times that suit their family schedule. They can log on early or late in the day and even join live classes in other countries. In order to ensure that each student is learning adequately, computer software will automatically monitor the number of hours a week each student studies on-line as well as that students' learning materials and assessment activities. Reports will be available for parents and teachers. The software can then identify the best learning activities and condition for each individual student and generate similar activities. It can also areas of weak achievement and produce special programs adjusted to the students' needs.

*Question 1.* What is the topic of the passage?

- A. The effect of information technology on education.
- B. Students don't have to go to school any more.
- C. Computer software will make sure students learn at home.
- D. Students can know about their weak aspects to focus.

*Question 2.* How many times are children who are older than 10 required to go to school weekly?

- A. No time
- B. Once or twice
- C. Three
- D. Four

*Question 3.* Which of the following could best replace the word "**encouraged**"?

- A. discouraged
- B. emboldened
- C. allowed
- D. banned

*Question 4.* The word "**they**" in paragraph 2 refers to \_\_\_\_\_

- A. students
- B. study hours
- C. children
- D. Older children

*Question 5.* Who/What counts the number of hours per week that students spend learning?

- A. Virtual reality
- B. Teacher
- C. Parents
- D. Computer software

*Question 6.* What CANT the software do?

- A. Monitor the time the students learn.
- B. Design materials for the students.

C. Find out the best activities for the students.

D. Identify weaknesses of the students.

*Question 7.* What is NOT mentioned as a benefit of information technology to the students?

A. Students can stay at home to learn.

B. Students can learn at times that suit their schedule.

C. Students' learning time won't be monitored.

D. Students' weak achievement can be identified.

**VIII. Write these sentences in another way, beginning as shown.**

1. People know that he is armed.

He

---

2. It is believed that the man was killed by terrorists.

The man

---

3. People think that the company is planning a new advertising campaign.

The company

---

4. It was reported that the President had suffered a heart attack.

The President

---

5. It is alleged that the man was driving at 110 miles an hour.

The man

---

6. People know that the expedition reached the South Pole in May.

The expedition

---

7. It is said that there is a secret tunnel between them.

There

---

8. People consider that she was the best singer that Australia has ever produced.

She

---

9. It is expected that the weather will be good tomorrow.

The weather

---

10. A lot of people believe that the Prime Minister and his wife have separated.

The Prime Minister and his wife

---

11. It is reported that the building has been badly damaged by the fire.

The building

---

12. People have acknowledged that underfunding, contributed to the problem.

Underfunding

---

13. People believe that he has special knowledge which may be useful to the police.

He

---

—

14. Journalists suppose that the footballer is earning ten million pounds a year.

The footballer

---

15. It is reported that the damage is extensive.

The damage

---

**IX. Change the following sentences into passive.**

1. The south coast continues to attract holidaymakers.

---

2. Somebody has described Keith Jones as the world's greatest guitarist.

---

3. Robert always hated other children teasing him.

---

4. Somebody should have offered Mary a drink when she arrived.

---

5. Kay's questions began to irritate Malcolm.

---

6. You have to see it to believe it.

---

7. People are blaming climate change for the recent flooding.

---

8. Why did no one inform me of the change of the plan?

---

9. Everybody believed that the plan would fail.

---

10. We have discovered that a mechanical fault caused the problem.

---

**X. Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first one.**

1. The police think the burglar got in through the bathroom window.

The burglar \_\_\_\_\_

2. She was sorry that she hadn't applied for the job in the library.

She regretted \_\_\_\_\_

3. People used to think that the earth was flat.

It \_\_\_\_\_

4. His mother was the most warm-hearted person I've ever known.

I've \_\_\_\_\_

5. People say that the driver was listening to his Walkman at the time of the crash.

The driver \_\_\_\_\_

6. Thanks to the improvement in export sales, the company has had a successful year.

Without \_\_\_\_\_

7. I'm sorry I didn't go to your birthday party last night.

I wish \_\_\_\_\_

8. People believe that the Prime Minister will resign tomorrow.

The Prime Minister \_\_\_\_\_

9. They are going to repair our car next week.

We \_\_\_\_\_

10. Although it was raining heavily, none of the guests came late.

In spite \_\_\_\_\_